Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 930SH.
- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 930SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 930SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes
- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents
At A Glance

Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

10 **Communication Services**

11 **Handset Security**

12 **Connectivity & File Backup**

13 **Handset Customization**

14 **Appendix**

Accessory

■ **Battery (SHBCC1)**

- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**).
- Use specified Charger/Headphones (sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
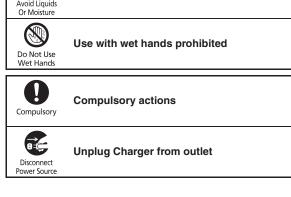
These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

⚠ **DANGER**	**Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **WARNING**	**Risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **CAUTION**	**Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use**

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

🚫 Prohibited	**Prohibited actions**
Do Not Disassemble	**Disassembly prohibited**
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	**Exposure to liquids prohibited**
Do Not Use Wet Hands	**Use with wet hands prohibited**

❗ Compulsory	**Compulsory actions**
Disconnect Power Source	**Unplug Charger from outlet**

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

⚠ **DANGER**

Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.

Compulsory

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

Do Not Disassemble

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.
Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction.
Use them in an appropriate place properly.

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

Prohibited

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

⚠ **WARNING**

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Compulsory

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Prohibited

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Compulsory

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, turn off handset, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

Prohibited

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Prohibited

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set.

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Compulsory

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.

vii

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
Misuse may cause injury, etc.

Compulsory

Battery

⚠ DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Do not dispose of battery in fire.
Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited
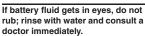
Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.
Eyes may be severely damaged.

Compulsory

⚠ WARNING
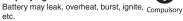
If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.
May cause skin damage.
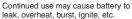
Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.
Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

Compulsory

⚠ CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.
Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Prohibited

Handset

⚠ WARNING

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.
Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

Prohibited

CAUTION:
Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
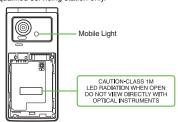
EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1
LED Product

As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

Mobile Light

CAUTION·CLASS 1M
LED RADIATION WHEN OPEN
DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

■ Mobile Light LED Properties
a) Emission Duration: Continuous
b) Wavelength
   White: 400 - 700 nm
c) Maximum Emission Output
   White: 240 μ W (1.2 mW inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Prohibited

Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

Compulsory
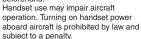
May cause electronic malfunctions, etc.
Be especially careful near the following devices:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Compulsory

Cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
Handset use may impair aircraft operation. Turning on handset power aboard aircraft is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty.

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

Compulsory

May cause heart damage.

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

Compulsory

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Prohibited

Eyesight may be affected.

Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.

Prohibited

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.

⚠ CAUTION
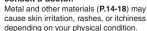
Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Compulsory

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Compulsory

Metal and other materials (**P.14-18**) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Prohibited

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

Do not swing handset by strap.

Prohibited

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Compulsory

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Prohibited
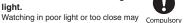
Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.

Compulsory

May cause injury, breakage, etc.

Watch TV from a distance in good light.

Compulsory

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.

Compulsory

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

ix

Charger (Sold Separately)

⚠ WARNING

Do not charge battery on unstable surfaces.
Handset may fall and disconnect from Charger or malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.
Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.
Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.
- AC Charger (sold separately): AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only): DC 12V/24V Input
Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Disconnect Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).
Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.

Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.
May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.

Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.
Fire may result.

Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.
May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.

Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/ Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.
May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.

Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Prohibited

⚠ CAUTION

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.
Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.
May cause malfunction or injury.

Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.
May cause burn injuries.

Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "**Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment**" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "**Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc.**" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

⚠ **WARNING**

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.

Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

xi

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back.
  Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with a dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or turn off handset power while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV.
After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.13-6**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

C E 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 930SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.
Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.
As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide[*].
Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear[**]	On the Body
930SH	0.682 W/kg	0.372 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.
The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

[*]Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
[**]Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

xiii

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.
The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.
Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
930SH	APYHRO00077	0.457 W/kg	0.478 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset.

The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/ use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/ distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsively.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA. See http://www.mpegla.com.
This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.

Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.
RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™. Copyright 1997-2008 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.
Copyright© 1996-2008 ACCESS Co., Ltd.
ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.
This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").
1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.
SoftBank Customer Center, General Information
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.14-40** "Customer Service."

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

2.4FH1

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™.
Mascot Capsule is a trademark of HI Corporation.
©2002-2008 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

ADOBE® FLASH® ENABLED

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Smartlink, VeilView and Wakeup TV are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.

picsel

Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies. Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- All text in Wikipedia is available under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License.
- Genius EJ-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Genius JE-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Meikyo J-Dic MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2008
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Hot Pepper Pockets is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid® and FaceSolid™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

Video Call, S! Application, Customized Screen, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Information Channel, S! Town, S! Loop, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, S! Quick News, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Circle Talk, S! Friend's Status, Lifestyle-Appli, S! Familiar Usability, S! Music Connect, PC Mail, Double Number, Decoration Call and Secure Remote Lock are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

930SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg[*]. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 930SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.672 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html (Japanese)

[*]Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

1

Getting Started

1 **Parts & Functions**

Getting Started

🔲 **Light Sensor**
🔁 **Earpiece**
🔳 **Display**
🔺 **Internal Camera**
🔻 **Microphone**
🔴 **Strap Eyelet**
🔷 **Headphone Port (with Port Cover)**
🔶 **Charging Terminals**
🔹 **Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)**
🔟 **External Device Port (with Port Cover)**
⓫ **External Display**
⓬ **Small Light**
⓭ **External Camera (lens cover)**
⓮ **Internal Antenna Location**
⓯ **Mobile Light**
⓰ **Infrared Port**
⓱ **Speaker**
⓲ 🔲 **Logo**
⓳ **Battery Cover**

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Handset Positions

Handset Closed

Keep handset closed when not in use.
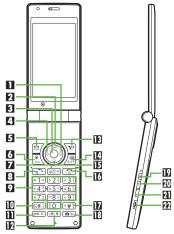
Handset Open

Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Handset Keys

Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.

1 **Multi Selector (right)** ⊙
   Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel infrared.

2 **Multi Selector (up)** ⓐ
   Open Standby Window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu.

3 **Center Key** ⏺
   Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

4 **Multi Selector (left)** ⊙
   Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®.

5 **Mail Key** ✉
   Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.

6 **Shortcuts & A/a Key** 🄰
   Open Shortcuts menu.

7 **Clear/Back Key** 🆑
   Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

8 **Start Key** 📞
   Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.

9 **Keypad** 🔟 - �?
   Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

10 **✕ Key** 🔣
   Enter ✻, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.

11 **Dictionary Key** 🔢
   Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate VeilView.

12 **Multi Job & Manner Key** 🔘
   Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

13 **Yahoo! Keitai Key** 🆈
   Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote.

14 **TV & Text Key** 📺
   Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

15 **Multi Selector (down)** ⓠ
   Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries.

16 **Power On/Off Key** ☎
   Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.

17 **# Key** 🔣
   Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

18 **Camera Key** 📷
   Activate mobile camera. Long press to activate Review.

Side Keys

19 **S! Circle Talk Key** 📼
   Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.
   Open: Open S! Circle Talk member list.

20 **Volume Up Key** ◀
   Closed: Scroll External Display indicators. Long Press to check e-money balance.

21 **Volume Down Key** ▶
   Long Press to start Pretense Call.
   Closed: Scroll External Display indicators.

22 **Shutter Key** ▭
   Open: Long press to activate mobile camera.
   Closed: Toggle Clock view.

Multi Selector & Side Keys
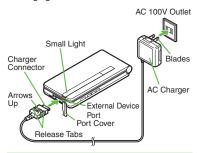
● In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press ⓐ or ⓠ	ⓢ
Press ⊙ or ⊙	⊙
Press ⓐ, ⓠ, ⊙ or ⊙	⊛
Press ◀ or ▶	◀▶

Charging Battery (AC Charger)

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

- Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.

AC 100V Outlet
Small Light
Charger Connector
Blades
Arrows Up
AC Charger
External Device Port
Port Cover
Release Tabs

Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

1 **Open Port Cover as shown**

2 **Connect AC Charger**

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 **Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet**

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 **Unplug AC Charger**

- Pull AC Charger straight out.

5 **Disconnect handset**

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.

6 **Fold back blades and replace Port Cover**

When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

USB Charge

- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.
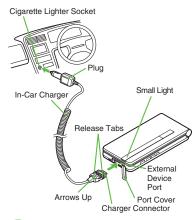
Charging Battery Overseas

- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Advanced

1-4

Charging Battery (In-Car Charger)

In-Car Charger may be purchased
separately.

Cigarette Lighter Socket

Plug

In-Car Charger

Release Tabs

Small Light

External
Device
Port

Arrows Up

Port Cover
Charger Connector

1 Open Port Cover as shown

2 Connect In-Car Charger
● With arrows up, insert connector until
it clicks.

3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

4 Start car engine
● Small Light illuminates red while
charging.
● Small Light goes out when battery is
full.

5 Unplug Charger

6 Disconnect handset
● Squeeze release tabs to remove
connector.

7 Replace Port Cover

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes
● Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle
to prevent charging with engine off.
● Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop
Holder.
● Avoid charging battery inside extremely
hot vehicles.

Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 930SH for the first time:

1 ☎ **(Long)**
- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.
☎ ➡ ☎ ➡ ● ➡ ⓒ ➡ ● ➡ **設定**
➡ ● ➡ *Language* ➡ ● ➡ *English*
➡ ● ➡ ☎ (Long) ➡ ☎ (Long) ➡
Change Menu window opens

2 **Select option** ➡ ●
Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.

> Last Name:
> _a   0/32

- My Details setup starts.
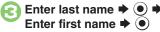
3 **Enter last name** ➡ ● ➡
Enter first name ➡ ●
- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

> 【S!速報ニュースとは？】

Standby
- Choose *No* to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed
- *Insert USIM Card* appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ✉, ● or ⟨▼⟩ is pressed for the first time.

> Get the latest
> provisioning and
> update?
> Yes
> No

- Choose *Yes* and press ●. When confirmation appears, press ●.
- Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock.

Power Off

1 ☎ **(Long)**
- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display & Indicators

Viewing Display

■ Standby

- Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.
- Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

Information Window

■ Information label (e.g., *Message*, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press ● to open it.

■ Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ☑, ● and ☑ appear at the bottom.

☑   ●   ☑

Display Saving
- Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

Backlight
- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press ⓪ - ⑨ to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).

Indicators

🗛, 🅱 and 🄿 indicate line type in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**).

■ Basic Status

1	🏛	International roaming in progress
2	📶	Signal strength[1]
	ⓟ	Packet transmission protocol ready (3G)
3	ⓖ	Packet transmission protocol ready (GSM)
	🄿	Packet transmission available (3G)
	GSM	Packet transmission available (GSM)
4	🔋	Battery strength (%[2] appears in turn)
5	🔥	IP Service enabled[3]
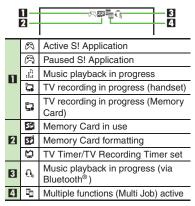
[1]The more bars the better.
[2]Battery strength % is an approximation.
[3]Appears when Decoration Call or S! Appli Communication is enabled.

ⓟ accompanies 🔥 even if packet transmission is not in progress. Both indicators disappear when Decoration Call and S! Appli Communication are *Off*.

Advanced

⍟ ●Handling Information list (**P.1-22**)

1-7

■ **Function Status**

1	🅐	Active S! Application
	🅐	Paused S! Application
	♫	Music playback in progress
	🖳	TV recording in progress (handset)
	🖳	TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
2	🎴	Memory Card in use
	🎴	Memory Card formatting
	🖸	TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
3	🎧	Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
4	🗐	Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

■ **Notifications**

1	✉	Unread mail
	📧	Unread Delivery Report
2	📼	Answer Phone active & message recorded
	📼	Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3	📞	New Voicemail
4	➡	Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5	📲	S! Appli Notification
6	🔑	Contents Key received
7	📰	Unread S! Information Channel info
	📋	Software Update result
	📰	Unread S! Quick News info
8	🗿	Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

■ **Warnings**

1	✉	Mail memory low
2	📧	Message delivery failure
3	🎴	Memory Card unusable/misinserted

■ **Transmissions**

1	🌐	SSL browsing in progress
	🌐	Waiting packet transmission (3G)
	🌐	Waiting packet transmission (GSM)
2	✉	Receiving mail
	✉	Sending mail
3	📇	S! Friend's Status online
	📍	Positioning in progress*
4	📋	Software Update in progress
5	🔌	USB Cable connected
	🔌	USB transmission in progress
	📡	Infrared transmission in progress
	📁	Infrared file transfer in progress
	🅱	Bluetooth® transmission ready
	🅱	Bluetooth® transmission in progress
	🎧	Bluetooth® talk in progress
	○	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	🖥	PC Site Browser in use
6	📶	RSS-compatible site
7	☀	Weather Indicator
8	📡	Infrared transmission ready

*Flashes while positioning.

1-8

■ **Settings**

1	🏃	Offline Mode active
2	📷	Answer Phone active
3	📵	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: **Always**)*
4	📅	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
	📆	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	♦	Hour Minder active
6	⏰	Alarm set
7	👤	Manner mode active
	🚗	Drive mode active
	📱	Original mode active
	▨	VeilView active
8	🔡	Keypad Lock active
	🔖	IC Card Lock active
9	📲	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
10	🔇	Ringtone (Silent)
	🔔	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
	⚡	Vibration active
11	⑤	Show Secret Data active
	🔏	Function Lock active

*Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

External Display Indicators

■ **Basic Status**

1 2
Y.il ▥

1	Y.il	Signal strength*
2	▥	Battery strength

*The more bars the better.

■ **Notifications**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

1	📞	Missed Calls
2	📷	Answer Phone message recorded
3	📞	Missed Call Notification
4	📧	New Voicemail
5	✉	New mail
6	📋	New Delivery Report
7	♦↑	Contents Key received
8	📡	Unread S! Information Channel info
9	🔲	Weather Indicator update

■ **Warnings**

1 2 3 4 5

1	✉	Message delivery failure
2	ᴬˣ	S! Information Channel info reception failure
3	📷	Decoration Call transmission failure
4	✖	IP Service connection failure
5	🔲	Weather Indicator update failure

■ **Handset Status**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

1	⏰	Alarm
2	📅	Schedule Alarm
3	☑	Task Alarm
4	📧	S! Appli Notification
5	💬	Unread S! Friend's Status notification
6	📺	TV Alarm (watch)
7	📹	TV Alarm (record)
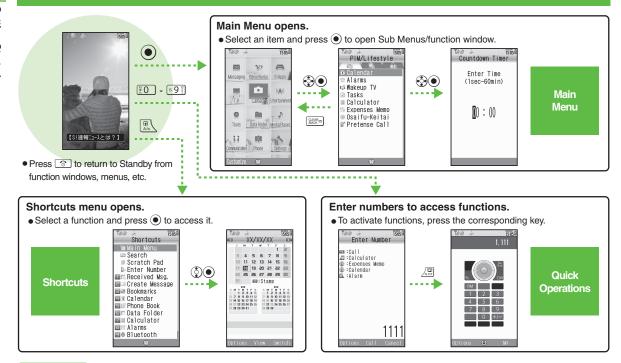
External Display Date & Time
● Press ▣ to toggle Clock view.

1

Handset Menus

Main Menu opens.

● Select an item and press ● to open Sub Menus/function window.

PIM/Lifestyle

Calendar
Alarms
Wakeup TV
Tasks
Calculator
Expenses Memo
Osaifu-Keitai
Pretense Call

Countdown Timer

Enter Time
(1sec-60min)

00 : 00

Main Menu

Messaging Yahoo! Keitai S! Appli
TV Camera Entertainment
Tools Data Folder Media Player
Communication Phone Settings
Customize

● Press [圖] to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.

【S!速報ニュースとは？】

Shortcuts menu opens.

● Select a function and press ● to access it.

Shortcuts

Main Menu
Search
Scratch Pad
Enter Number
Received Msg.
Create Message
Bookmarks
Calendar
Phone Book
Data Folder
Calculator
Alarms
Bluetooth

XX/XX/XX

:Stamp

Options View Switch

Shortcuts

Enter numbers to access functions.

● To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Enter Number

:Call
:Calculator
:Expenses Memo
:Calendar
:Alarm

1,111

1111

Options Call Cancel

Options ☺ M+

Quick Operations

Advanced

●Customizing shortcuts ●Restoring default shortcuts (**P.1-22**)

Key Shortcut

Long Press $\boxdot$, $\boxed{Y}$ or $\odot$ to access assigned functions.
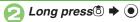
$\boxdot$	Open S! Mail Composition window
$\boxed{Y}$	Activate Familink Remote
$\odot$	Open PC Site Browser menu
$\oslash$	Create new Phone Book entries
$\odot$	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
$\odot$	Activate/cancel Infrared

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to $\odot$:

1. $\odot$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ In **Phone Settings menu**, *Set Key Shortcut* ➡ $\odot$

   > Key Shortcut
   > Long press$\boxdot$/
   > Create Message
   > Long press$\boxed{Y}$
   > Familink Remote
   > Long press$\odot$
   > PC Site Browser

2. *Long press* $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$

   > Long press$\odot$
   > From Appli
   > From Bookmark
   > From Other
   > Off

3. *From Appli* ➡ $\odot$

4. *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ In PIM/ **Lifestyle menu**, *Calculator* ➡ $\odot$

Bookmark
  In ③, *From Bookmark* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ Select title ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\odot$
Bluetooth® or Infrared On/Off
  In ③, *From Other* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ Select item ➡ $\odot$
Show Secret Data Setting Window
  In ③, *From Other* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Secret Mode* ➡ $\odot$
IC Card Lock On/Off
  In ③, *From Other* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *IC CardLock On/Off* ➡ $\odot$
Canceling Assigned Function
  In ③, *Off* ➡ $\odot$

1

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).
- Only Display Change is available for Motion Control.

■ Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Barcode/Scan, Review, Photo Camera Settings, Video Camera Settings
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number Settings, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

Key assignments are largely the same as in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

1 🔲 **(Long)**

2 *Simple Menu* ➤ ●

While Using an Incompatible Function
- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu

1 🔲 **(Long)**

2 *Standard Menu* ➤ ●

Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet

②
Toggle windows

① Open Scratch Pad

Jot down information

Multi Job may not be activated from some menus/windows (e.g., when selecting ringtone/ringvideo, etc.).

Using Multi Job

1 **In a function window,** [R]
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press [R].

Shortcuts
Main Menu
Search
Scratch Pad
Enter Number
Received Msg.
Create Message
Bookmarks
Calendar
Phone Book
Data Folder
Calculator
Alarms
Bluetooth

2 **Select function ▶ ●**

Received Msg.
Mail
Folder 1
Folder 2
Folder 3

● Menu/window opens.

3 **To toggle active windows,** [画面]

Expenses Memo
Add New Expense
Totals
Edit Category

↑
[画面]
↓

Received Msg.
Mail
Folder 1
Folder 2
Folder 3

4 [☎] **▶ Multi Job ends**
● When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

1-13

1
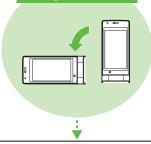
Motion Control

Sensor detects handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, mute ringer, etc.
● Activate Display first.
● Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

Change Orientation

Turn Over

Shake Left/Right
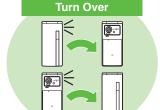
Display Change

Rotate handset 90 degrees counterclockwise and return. Display orientation changes accordingly.

Display Rotation
Digital TV
PC Site Browser
Document Viewer
Image Viewer
Video Viewfinder
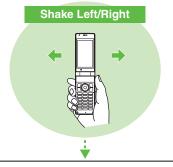
Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

Ringer
Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

Vibration
Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

● Some tones may not be silenced.

Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

Music
Music Player

Channels
TV

Images
Data Folder
(Pictures)

Pages
Document
Viewer

Shake Forward or Backward

Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

Fonts
Message Window
Yahoo! Keitai

Zoom Image
Data Folder
(Pictures)

Zoom Page
PC Site Browser
Document Viewer

Disabling Display Rotation

Video Viewfinder always rotates with handset orientation.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

2 **In Phone Settings menu,**
   Motion Control ➡ ●

   Motion Control
   Display Change
   Action Settings
   Action Test

   Motion Control Menu

3 *Display Change* ➡ ● ➡
   Select function ➡ ●

4 *Off* ➡ ●

Activating Motion Control by Function

1 **In Motion Control menu,**
   Action Settings ➡ ●

2 Select function ➡ ●

3 *On* ➡ ●

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily
   Enter Handset Code ➡ Shake
   handset left or right
   ■ Close handset in Standby to cancel
     Show Secret Data.

Important Motion Control Usage Notes
● Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid
  unintended results.
● Motion Control may be unavailable while
  handset is ringing/vibrating.
● Confirm there is ample space for Motion
  Control use; hold handset firmly and
  shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage.
  Do not shake handset roughly; handset
  may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

Advanced

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1 ⌨ (Long)

Manner mode
selected.

- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active
- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 930SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.
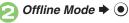
Canceling Manner Mode
  ⌨ (Long)

Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *NW Settings*

2 *Offline Mode* ➜ ●

3 *On* ➜ ●

Offline Mode
◉ On
○ Off

Offline Mode
enabled.

- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode
  In 3, *Off* ➜ ●

Advanced

👆 ●Changing handset modes ●Creating a custom mode ●Resetting Mode Settings (**P.1-22**)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.
● Write down Security Codes.
● Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code	**9999** by default; use or change some functions
Center Access Code	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
Network Password	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

Change Network Password as needed.

Incorrect Code Entry
● *Handset code is incorrect!* appears; try again.
● If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Changing Handset Code

Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

1 ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ●

Phone Settings Menu

2 *Locks* ➔ ●

3 *Chg. Handset Code* ➔ ●
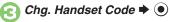
4 **Enter current Handset Code** ➔ ●

5 **Enter new Handset Code** ➔ ●

6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➔ ●

1-17

1

My Details & Basic Tools

My Number

1. ● ➜ ⓪

   YYYY
   YYYY
   ☎ 090392XXXX5
   📧 Unsaved
   ➜ <Add New Entry>

   ● Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

1. ● **(Long)**
   ● Keypad Lock activates.
   ● ☎ does not turn off handset power.

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

● Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press ☎ to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

Canceling Keypad Lock
   ● **(Long)**

Pen Light

1. ▣ **(Long)**
   ● Mobile Light illuminates.

2. ▣ ➜ **Mobile Light goes out**

Important Pen Light Usage Note
● Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

Battery Meter

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➜ *Battery Meter* ➜ ●
   ● Approximate battery strength appears.

Phone Help

Access this handy guide to handset settings and key functions/shortcuts.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.*

2. *Phone Help* ➜ ●

3. **Select item** ➜ ●
   ● Toggle guides as needed.

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.

1. 辞書 **(Long)**

Canceling VeilView
   辞書 **(Long)**

Advanced

✍ ● Editing/clearing My Details ● Toggling My Details in Dual Mode (**P.1-22**)
   ● Changing battery strength indicator pattern ● Changing VeilView pattern/density (**P.1-23**)

Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses

Line A

Phone Number A
090392XXXX7
Mail Address A
○○○@softbank.ne.jp

SH

Line B

Phone Number B
090392XXXX8
Mail Address B
△△△@softbank.ne.jp

Modes

Select from three usage modes:

A Mode
(Line A* only)

B Mode
(Line B* only)

Dual Mode
(both accounts)

*Callers to the other line hear a busy tone; messages are received without alerts.

Account Memory Management

While one line is active, call/messaging records for the other do not appear.

Phone Book Entries

Call Log Records

Messaging Folders

- Customize Wallpaper, incoming call graphic, ringtone, vibration, etc. by account.

Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●
2. In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ ●
3. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●
4. *On* ➡ ●
5. Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Double Number
In 4, *Off* ➡ ● ➡ 5

- When Double Number is canceled:
  - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
  - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
  - Double Number account is not affected.

Advanced

1-19

1

Modes

Activate *A Mode* to use Line A only, *B Mode* to use Line B only, or *Dual Mode* to use both accounts.
While abroad, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only

● Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions
● Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
● When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only

● Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions
● Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
● S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

Advanced

● Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line ● Hiding Internet connection confirmation (**P.1-23**)

<table>
</table>

Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

● Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

| **Phone Book Entries** | **Messaging** | **Calling** |
| Specify A, B or Dual. | Select Line A or Line B. Sender Address changes accordingly. | Select Line A or Line B. Caller ID changes accordingly. |

● 🖼, **B** and **D** indicate line type in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

1 🔄 (Long)

2 Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

3 Select mode ➡ ●
  ● For *B Mode* confirmation appears.

4 *Yes* ➡ ●

Saving Modes to Phone Book Entries

1 ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ●

2 *Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●

Entries Saved with Double Number *Off*
● *Dual* is set automatically.

Advanced

👆 ●Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode ●Setting main line for Dual Mode (**P.1-23**)

1-21

1

USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Connectivity* ➡ *USB Charge* ➡ ● ➡ *Disable* ➡ ●

Information

	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Handling Information list	**Opening List Manually** *Information* ➡ ●
	Clearing List *Information* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Shortcuts

	Start Here ℛ ➡ **Select numbered function** ➡ ☒ ➡ **See below**
Customizing shortcuts	**Changing Default Shortcuts** *Assign* ➡ ● ➡ **Select menu item** ➡ ● ➡ **Select new item** ➡ ●
	Changing Item Order *Move* ➡ ● ➡ **Select target location** ➡ ●
Restoring default shortcuts	ℛ ➡ **Select numbered function** ➡ ☒ ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Motion Control

Practicing Motion Control actions	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Motion Control* ➡ ● ➡ *Action Test* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● • Follow onscreen instructions.

Mode

	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Changing handset modes	**Selecting a Handset Mode** **Select mode** ➡ ●
	Customizing Handset Modes **Select mode** ➡ ☒ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust settings** • Not available for Normal mode.
Creating a custom mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Original* ➡ ☒ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust settings**
Resetting Mode Settings	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **Select mode** ➡ ☒ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

My Details

	Start Here ● ➡ ⁰0 ➡ **See below**
Editing/clearing My Details	**Editing My Details** ☺ **Select tab** ➡ **Select item** ➡ ☒ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Edit** ➡ ☒
	Clearing My Details ☒ ➡ *Reset My Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	● ➡ ⁰0 ➡ ☒ ➡ *Switch to B* or *Switch to A* ➡ ●

Battery Meter
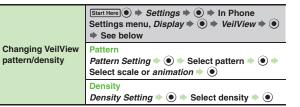
Changing battery strength indicator pattern	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ % ➡ *Mini Battery* ➡ % ➡ Select pattern ➡ % ● For patterns other than *Clock & Battery*, indicators appear in turn. To change interval, press ✉. ● For *Battery level* (or *level*), approximate battery strength appears as a percentage. ● *Remaining time* is approximated for current handset usage pattern. ■ Remaining time is hidden while charging.

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	[Start Here] % ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ % ➡ *VeilView* ➡ % ➡ See below
	Pattern *Pattern Setting* ➡ % ➡ Select pattern ➡ % ➡ Select scale or *animation* ➡ %
	Density *Density Setting* ➡ % ➡ Select density ➡ %

Double Number

■ All Modes

Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Password Entry* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ % ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ %
Renaming Double Number modes	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Mode Name* ➡ % ➡ Select mode ➡ % ➡ Enter name ➡ % ➡ Select icon ➡ %

■ A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Show Missed* ➡ % ➡ *On* ➡ %
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Packet Warning* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ % ● Available for B Mode.

■ Dual Mode
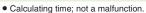
Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Reject By Line* ➡ % ➡ Select line ➡ % ➡ *On* ➡ %
Setting main line for Dual Mode	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Double Number Settings* ➡ % ➡ *Send Priority* ➡ % ➡ Select option ➡ %

Battery Meter

--- appears

● Calculating time; not a malfunction.

100% does not appear

● This is by design; not a malfunction.

Battery runs out faster

● A low ambient temperature reduces battery time.
● An older battery may run out faster.

Remaining time changes suddenly

● Time estimated by handset status; estimate may take time to appear.

2

Basic Operations

Changing Font Size

2

Basic Operations

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:

```
              15:05
Shortcuts
 Main Menu
 Search
 Scratch Pad
 Enter Numb...
 Received M...
 Create Msg.
 Bookmarks
 Calendar
 Phone Book
```

1 ⌨ **(Long)**

```
Change Menu
 Simple Menu
 Standard Menu
 Large Font Menu
```

2 *Large Font Menu* ➡ ●

Canceling Large Font Menu
In 2, *Standard Menu* ➡ ●

Customizing Font Sizes

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

```
              15:05
Phone Settings
 Mode Settings
 Display
 Customize
```

2 **In Phone Settings menu,** *Display* ➡ ●

3 *Font Settings* ➡ ●

```
              15:05
Font Settings
Font Size

Font Weight
Normal
```
Font Settings Menu

4 *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ●

5 **Select size** ➡ ●

Changing Font Weight

1 **In Font Settings menu,** *Font Weight* ➡ ●

```
              15:05
Font Weight
 Thin
 Normal
 Bold
```

2 **Select weight** ➡ ●

Standby Window (Japanese)

In Standby, view S! Quick News or Calendar, access shortcut icons, and more.

1 ⑤

Standby Window

2 ⌨

● Press ⌨ to toggle panels. (Long Press ⌨ to toggle panels in reverse.)

3 Select item ➜ ●

4 ☎ ➜ Standby Window closes

Standby Window Panels

■ **Shortcut Panel**

● Access functions from shortcut icons.

■ **Calendar/Tag Panel**

● Open Calendar; enter schedules, etc. in tags.

■ **News Panel**

● View S! Quick News.

■ **Member Panel**

● Open entry/member details saved in Phone Book/S! Friend's Status member list.

Selecting Panel Items
[Shortcut Panel]/[Calendar/Tag Panel] ✉ ➜ *Select Item* ➜ ● ➜ **Select item** ➜ ● (☐/☑) ➜ ⌨
■ To the left is an example of Shortcut Panel with all items checked (☑).

Advanced

🖐 ●Changing display option ●Assigning shortcuts/Bookmarks ●Managing shortcuts/Bookmarks ●Adding news items ●Changing news scroll speed ●Showing unread news only ●Changing news image setting ●Updating news items manually ●Assigning members ●Managing members (**P.2-26 - 2-27**)

2

Basic Operations

Panel Selection

1 In Standby Window, ✉ ➡
Standby Window ➡ ●

```
Tll◎ 🔋          1505⊟
   Standby Window
Display Window
Switch by Key
Display Panel
```

2 *Display Panel* ➡ ● ➡ Select
panel ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ ☒
● Panels with ☑ (checked) appear in
Standby Window.

Using Tags

1 In Calendar/Tag Panel,
select row with □ ➡ ●

2 Enter text ➡ ●

```
Tll◎ 🔋          1505⊟




□ Birthday



          ○
   Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
                       1  2
  X   3  4  5  6  7  8  9
     10 11 12 13 14 15 16
XXXX 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
     24 25 26 27 28 29 30
     31
```

Checking/Unchecking Tags
⊙ ➡ Select tag ➡ ✉ ➡ *Check Note*
or *Uncheck* ➡ ●
■ Checked tag (with ☑) turns gray.
Deleting Tag Notes
⊙ ➡ Select tag ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete Note*
➡ ●
● To delete all checked tags, follow these
steps:
⊙ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete Checked Note* ➡ ●

2-4

Wallpaper

1**● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ●**

2***Wallpaper* ➡ ●**

> **Wallpaper**
> Preset Pictures
> Pictures
> DCIM
> Flash®
> Slide W paper
> Other Documents
> Customized Screen
> Blank
>
> Wallpaper Menu

3**Select folder ➡ ●**

4**Select image ➡ ●**
  - For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.
  - Some files may not be usable.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period
  - A confirmation appears. Follow these steps: *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ●
If Double Number Mode Menu Opens Select mode ➡ ●
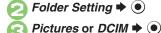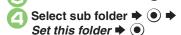
Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some images may not appear.

1**In Wallpaper menu, *Slide W paper* ➡ ●**

> Slide W paper
> Pattern Setting
> Pattern 1
> Folder Setting
> Pictures

2***Folder Setting* ➡ ●**

3***Pictures* or *DCIM* ➡ ●**

4**Select sub folder ➡ ● ➡ *Set this folder* ➡ ●**
  - Omit steps for sub folder if none.

If There is No Image in Set Folder
  - Preset images appear.
Using Preset Images
    In 3, *Preset Pictures* ➡ ●
Changing Pattern
    In 2, *Pattern Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●

Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

2

Basic Operations
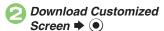
Downloading Customized Screen

Use preloaded Customized Screen or download new via handset as follows: Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

1. ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ● ➜ *Customized Screen* ➜ ●

Customized Screen Menu

2. *Download Customized Screen* ➜ ●
   - Handset connects to the Internet and source site list appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

To install the most recent version, apply the file then download the updated one.

1. In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen ➜ ●

2. ● ➜ ●

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen
- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
  After ❶, ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
  ■ Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

When Selected Customized Screen is Active
- Cancellation confirmation appears after ❶.

S! Familiar Usability

Download and install applications that load legacy model interfaces.

Downloading S! Familiar Usability

1. In Customized Screen menu, *S! Familiar Usability* ➜ ●
   - Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Familiar Usability Setup

1. In Customized Screen menu, select application ➜ ● ➜ ●

Canceling Temporarily
● ➜ ✉ ➜ *通常メニュー* ➜ ●

Advanced

Accessing Customized Screen source sites ●Applying preset Customized Screen ●Canceling Customized Screen ●Canceling S! Familiar Usability ●Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability unconditionally ●Deleting Customized Screens (**P.2-27**)

Customizing Handset Responses

Ringtone

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In
Phone Settings menu,
Sounds & Alerts ➡ ●

```
📶◎ ⤴              15:05
  Sounds & Alerts
Volume

Ringtone/videos
```
Sounds & Alerts Menu

2 *Ringtone/videos* ➡ ●

3 Select item ➡ ●
For *For New Message*, etc., select
Assign Tone and press ●.

```
📶◎ ⤴              15:05
  For Voice Call
Preset Sounds
Ring Songs･Tones
Music
Videos
Flash® Ringtones
Customized Screen
```

4 Select folder ➡ ●

5 Select tone/file ➡ ●

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.
After ③, *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
time ➡ ●
Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
In ④, *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
● After ⑤, start point selection window
opens. Follow these steps:
Select start point ➡ ●
Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and
press ● to proceed.
**When using Double Number in Dual
Mode (P.1-19)**
● When ringtones are customizable for
each line, press ⌨ in Ringtone/videos
menu to switch lines.

Vibration

1 In Sounds & Alerts menu,
Vibration ➡ ●

2 Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Switch
On/Off* ➡ ●

```
📶◎ ⤴              15:05
  Incoming Call
Switch On/Off
Off    ◎ On
Vibr   ◎ Link to Sound
Patte  ◉ Off
```

3 *On* ➡ ●

4 *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ●
● To check vibration patterns, select
one and press ⌨.

5 Select pattern ➡ ●

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration
In ③, *Link to Sound* ➡ ●
Precaution
● Cancel Vibration when charging battery
to help avoid accidents.

Text Entry

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.

Text Entry Window (Message Text)

Opening Help

☑ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

Note

● Pressing ☎ repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Switching Entry Modes

1 🖳

● Available entry modes appear.

2 Select mode ➡ ●

● Entry Mode Indicators:

あ*	Kanji (hiragana)
ア/_ア	Double/single-byte katakana
A/a	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
_A/_a	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ˈ	Single-byte number
⊠	Character Code

*予 appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.
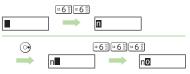
Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press ⁕1⁕ three times.
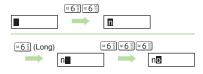
Press ☎ to toggle options in reverse.

To enter characters assigned to the same key, press ⊙ first.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.

Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.

Advanced

⚙ ●Using Character Codes ●Using Pager Code (**P.2-28**)

Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in kanji (hiragana) mode:

1. `3` `3` `3` **(す)** ➡ `○` ➡ `3` `3` `3` **(す)** ➡ `※` **(ず)** ➡ `2` `2` **(き)**

   Message:
   あ
   すずき   0/30K

2. `●` **(No Conv)**

Kanji

Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

1. **Enter すずき and press** `○`

   Message:
   あ
   鈴木   0/30K

   1/21 Candidates
   20鈴木   15鈴木えみ
   19鈴木町   14鈴木京香

   ● In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is entered. (Predictive)

2. **鈴木**

   ● To exit suggestion list, press `CLEAR BACK`.

3. `●`

   Message:
   あ
   鈴木   4/30K

   0/25 Candidates
   24さん   19に
   23の   18と

   ● Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed
● Press `✉` or `Y` to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  ■ Press `Y` to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.
Phonetic Conversion
  Enter reading in hiragana ➡ `✉`
Selecting Multiple Converted Words
  `A`

Advanced

🖐 ●Inserting line breaks ●Inserting spaces ●Changing Font Size ●Disabling suggestions based on entered characters ●Disabling suggestions based on entered words ●Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words ●Lowering type priorities in suggestion list ●Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list ●Clearing entry log (**P.2-28**)

2

Basic Operations

One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: 鈴木 was previously selected after conversion.

1 `3` `3` `3` (す) ➜ ⓥ

2 **Select word/phrase** ➜ ●

Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter ジュン:

1 💬 ➜ **アイウ** ➜ ●

Message:
ア
0/30K

2 `3` `3` (シ) ➜ 💬✕ (ジ) ➜ `8` `8` (ユ) ➜ 💬 (ユ) ➜ `0` `0` `0` (ン) ➜ ●

Message:
ア
6/30K
ジュン

Pictograms & Symbols

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1 💬✕

Message:
a
0/30K

Common Pict 💬=All Pict
Log 💬=MyPict

● Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 💬 or 💬 ➜ **List toggles**

● In Pictogram List, press 💬 to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

3 **Select Pictogram or Symbol** ➜ ●

● Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 💬 ➜ **List closes**

Emoticons

1 💬 ➜ **Emoticons** ➜ ●

Emoticons
01 (^0^)
02 o(^-^)o
03 (^0^)/
04 p(^^)q
05 (>_<)

2 **Select emoticon** ➜ ●

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

● In kanji (hiragana) mode, enter かお or a descriptive word such as わーい or うーん, then convert the entry.
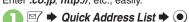
EmoticonWordLink

● Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as 嬉しい or 悲しい, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

2-10

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

1 🖊 ➡ *Quick Address List* ➡ ●

> Quick Address
> 🔲 @softbank.ne.jp
> 🔲 @ezweb.ne.jp
> 🔲 @docomo.ne.jp

Select extension ➡ ●
● Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.
Example: To enter *PM*
Use key inscriptions.

1 ⁊7⁷⁴⁶ ➡ ⁊

> Message:
> あ 0/30K
> マハ
>
> 1/10 Candidates
> 09マハ 04PM
> 08パ 03Ｐｍ
> 07マ6 02Pm
> 0676 01ｐm

Select word/phrase (*PM*) ➡ ●

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.
Example: To enter *終電*

1 ⁊3³ (*さ*) ➡ ⁊8⁸ (*や*)
➡ ⁊1¹ (*あ*) ➡ ⁊4⁴ (*だ*)
➡ ⁊0 (*わ*) ➡ ⌖

> Message:
> あ 0/30K
> 終電
>
> 55/55 Candidates
> 46生田 51焦土を
> 47正田 52正田を
> 48昇段 53照度を
> 49商談 54終電

Select word/phrase (*終電*) ➡ ●

One Hiragana Word Call
● Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press ⌖.

Editing Characters

2

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また．お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**:

1 Select character

> Message:
> あ
> また■お願いします
> 18/30K

2 [CLEAR/BACK]

> Message:
> あ
> また**お**願いします
> 16/30K

● The highlighted character is deleted.

3 Select target location ➡ Enter characters

> Message:
> あ
> また明日**お**願いします
> 20/30K
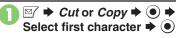
Recovering Deleted Characters
● Press [⏰] once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text
● Long Press [CLEAR/BACK] at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press [CLEAR/BACK].

Jumping to the End or Top of Text
[✉] ➡ *Cursor Position* ➡ ● ➡ *Jump to End* or *Jump to Top* ➡ ●

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 [✉] ➡ *Cut* or *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ●

> Cut
> お願いします**ま**た明日
> 20/30K

Cut
● To cancel and start over, press [Y].

2 Highlight text range ➡ ●

3 Select target location ➡ [♯/☓] (Long)

> Message:
> あ
> また明日**お**願いします
> 20/30K

● Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text
Select target location ➡ [✉] ➡ *Paste*
➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ ●
■ Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

⅍ ●Undo conversion or recover deleted characters ●Inserting Phone Book entry items (**P.2-28**)

Saving Frequently Used Words
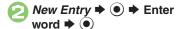
Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In **Phone Settings menu,** *User Dictionary* ➡ ●

   User Dictionary
   New Entry
   Saved Word List
   Acquire Dict.

   User Dictionary Menu

2. *New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter word ➡ ●

3. Enter reading ➡ ●

Editing Entries
   In ②, *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ Edit reading ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

930SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Download specialized 930SH Download Dictionaries from SH-web Mobile Internet site. Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.
Some dictionary files may not be usable.

1. In User Dictionary menu, *Acquire Dictionary* ➡ ●

   Acquire Dict.
   Dictionary 1
   Dictionary 2
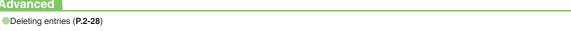
2. Select number ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●
   ● Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary
   In ②, select dictionary ➡ ✉ ➡ *Cancel* ➡ ●
Viewing Dictionary Information
   In ②, select dictionary ➡ ✉ ➡ *Info* ➡ ●

Advanced

🔖 ●Deleting entries (**P.2-28**)

Using Dictionaries

2

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries[*]	Wikipedia, Meikyo J-Dic MX.net, Genius EJ-Dic MX.net, Genius JE-Dic MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper Pockets, and more

[*]Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

Searching As-You-Type

<div>1</div> `辞書 0` ➡ `Yr` ➡ **Select dictionary** ➡ ●

Ｔⅰⅼ◎　↓　　　　　　1505
ジーニアスモバイル和英
三三

Dictionary Window
● Last used dictionary appears first.

<div>2</div> **Enter reading (spelling for English-Japanese dictionary)**
● Search results appear as you type.

<div>3</div> **Select word** ➡ ●

Ｔⅰⅼ◎　↓　　　　　　1505
ジーニアスモバイル和英
けいたい［携帯］
◇携帯する carry；pack.
◇携帯用の portable；
pocket.

Definition/Translation Window

> **Looking Up in Online Dictionaries**
> **[Definition/Translation Window]** ✉
> ➡ *WebDict.Search* ➡ ● ➡ 検索 ➡
> ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ●

Searching by Keyword

<div>1</div> **In Dictionary window,** ✉

<div>2</div> *Search Method* ➡ ● ➡ *Keyword Search* ➡ ●

<div>3</div> **Select entry field** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ●

Ｔⅰⅼ◎　↓　　　　　　1505
ジーニアスモバイル和英
電話　　　　　　Search

<div>4</div> *Search* ➡ ● ➡ **Select word** ➡ ●

Advanced

● **Viewing dictionary information** ● **Changing Font Size** ● **Copying Index Word** ● **Looking up copied words in dictionaries** ● **Deleting History & bookmarks** ● **Updating dictionary list** (**P.2-29**)

Using Online Dictionaries

1. **In Dictionary window, ⒴ ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ ●**
   - Terms of service appear when using online dictionary for the first time. Read and then press ●.

2. **Select pull-down menu ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●**

3. **Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ 検索 ➡ ●**

   ```
   Connect to the
   network.
   OK?
   ┌─────────────────┐
   │      Yes        │
   ├─────────────────┤
   │Yes(ConfirmNoMore)│
   ├─────────────────┤
   │      No         │
   └─────────────────┘
   ```

4. **Yes ➡ ●**

5. **Select word ➡ ●**
   - Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation
In ④, *Yes(ConfirmNoMore)* ➡ ● ➡ From ⑤

Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks

1. **In definition/translation window, ✉**

2. **Bookmark ➡ ●**

Opening History or Bookmarks

1. **In Dictionary window, ✉**

2. **History or Bookmark List ➡ ●**

3. **Select word ➡ ●**
   - Definition/translation window opens.

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1. **In Dictionary window, ✉**

2. **Add Dictionary ➡ ●**

3. **Select file ➡ ●**

Canceling Added Dictionary
In ②, *Cancel Dictionary* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

To use dictionaries before entering text, press 辞書.

1. **In kanji (hiragana) mode, enter text ➡ Before pressing ● to complete entry, 辞書**

   ```
   ┌── Switch Dictionary ──┐
   │ ● 明鏡モバイル国語      │
   │ ○ ジーニアスモバイル英和 │
   │ ○ ジーニアスモバイル和英 │
   │ ○ ネット辞書           │
   └───────────────────────┘
   ```

2. **Select dictionary ➡ ●**

3. **Search ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ●**
   - Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text
After ③, ✉ ➡ *Paste Index Word* ➡ ●

Searching Text

Web Search

1 ⏺ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⏺ ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.*

2 *Search* ➡ ⏺

Search Window

● *Web Search* is selected by default.

3 Select entry field ➡ ⏺ ➡ Enter search text ➡ ⏺

4 *Search* ➡ ⏺
● Search results appear.

Searching within PC Sites
[Search Window] ✉ ➡ *Change Browser* ➡ ⏺ ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ⏺

Mail Search

1 In Search window, *Mail Search* ➡ ⏺

2 Select entry field ➡ ⏺ ➡ Enter search text ➡ ⏺

3 *Search* ➡ ⏺ ➡ Select option ➡ ⏺

Searching within Received or Sent Messages
[Search Window] ✉ ➡ *Change Mail Folder* ➡ ⏺ ➡ *Received Messages* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ⏺

Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.*

2. *Scratch Pad* ➜ ●
   ● Text entry window opens.

3. Enter text ➜ ●

   ```
   Scratch Pad
   1 Save to Notepad
   2 Save as Sticky …
   3 Create Message
   4 Save to Calendar
   5 Save to Tasks
   6 Save to Phone B…
   7 Save as Text Fi…
   8 Web Search
   ```

4. *Save to Notepad* ➜ ●
   ● Open saved entries from Notepad.
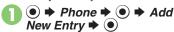
Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation
Add Standby Window Tag	*Save as Sticky Note* ➜ ●
Enter Mail Message Text	*Create Message* ➜ ● ➜ Select mail type ➜ ●
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	*Save to Calendar* ➜ ●
Enter Task Subject/Details	*Save to Tasks* ➜ ●
Add Last Name to Phone Book	*Save to Phone Book* ➜ ● ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	*Save as Text File* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Docs).
Search Internet	*Web Search* ➜ ● ➜ Select browser ➜ ●

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ●

New Entry
Last Name:
First Name:
Reading-Last Name:
Reading-FirstName:
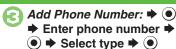
2 *Last Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter last name ➡ ● ➡ *First Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter first name ➡ ●

New Entry
Last Name:
Ueda
First Name:
Mikio
Reading-Last Name:
Ueda
Reading-FirstName:
Mikio

● Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 *Add Phone Number:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

Last Name:
Ueda
First Name:
Mikio
Reading-Last Name:
Ueda
Reading-FirstName:
Mikio
Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:

● To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 *Add Email Address:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter mail address ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

Reading-FirstName:
Mikio
Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:
Email 1:
aabb@xxx.yyy
Add Email Address:

● To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 *Category:* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●

New Entry
Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:
Email 1:
aabb@xxx.yyy
Add Email Address:
Category:
Friends
Address:
Office:

Phone Book Entry Window

6 �framebox{Y!}

● Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry
● Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.
Selecting Mode in Dual Mode (P.1-19)
  [Phone Book Entry Window] *Mode:*
  ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●

Advanced

⎘ ●Saving other information ●Setting Light Color ●Changing vibration pattern ●Editing Phone Book entries ●Setting incoming mail ring time ●Renaming Categories ●Moving Categories (**P.2-30**)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call:* ➡ ●**

> **For Voice Call**
> Assign Tone
> Set Play Point
> Remove Tone/Video

2 *Assign Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

3 Select tone/file ➡ ●

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, *Secret:* ➡ ●**

2 *On* ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders
Ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Customizing Response by Category

1 ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Category Control* ➡ ●

> **Category**
> No Category
> Family
> Friends
> Business
> Shopping
> VIPs

Category Control Menu

2 Select Category ➡ ✉ ➡ Select item ➡ ●

3 Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Customize responses ➡ ✉

- Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
- Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry
- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.

> Save this number
> to your Phone
> Book?
> Yes
> No

1 **When confirmation appears, *Yes* ➡ ●**

> Save to Phone Book
> As New Entry
> As New Detail

2 *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ✉

Saving to an Existing Entry
In 2, *As New Detail* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ✉

2

Basic Operations

2-19

Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

1 (◎) ➡ ⊙ **Select katakana row**

Entry Search Window (By a-ka-sa-ta-na)
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), Line indicators appear.

2 **Select entry** ➡ ●

Entry Details

3 **Select phone number**

4 🔄

Placing Video Calls
After **3**, ● ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●

Changing Search Method

1 **In entry search window,** ✉
➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ●

2 *Sort Entries* ➡ ●
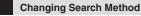
3 **Select method** ➡ ●
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] ✉ **(press repeatedly to toggle search methods)**

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.

Select Recipient Window

1 *Phone Book* ➡ ●
- Entry search window opens.

2 **Select entry** ➡ ●

3 **Select phone number or mail address** ➡ ●

- Recipient is entered.
- Omit **3** if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

◯ ●Changing view for entry search window ●Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions ●Messaging via Phone Book ●Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book ●Deleting Phone Book entries ●Checking memory status ●Copying Phone Book entries (And more on **P.2-29** - **2-31**)

2-20

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ **Preset Folders**

	Contents
Pictures[*]	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to *SD(DCIM)*)
Ring Tones[*]	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli[*]	S! Applications
Music[*]	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos[*]	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli[*]	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books[*]	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen[*]	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Call	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Docs	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

[*]Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Memory Status

● Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

⬤ ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ⬤

Opening Files

1
$\odot$ ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ $\odot$

- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press ⍓.

2
Select folder ➡ $\odot$

To open a sub folder, select it and press $\odot$.

File List

3
Select file ➡ $\odot$

- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press ᴄʟᴇᴀʀ/ʙᴀᴄᴋ.
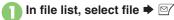
Handling Open Images
- Press $\odot$ to enlarge, or press ⍟#⍟ or ⍟✳⍟ to open next/previous ones.

S! Mail Attachments
After ②, select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send/ Blog* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *As Message* ➡ $\odot$
- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Copy Protected Files (⇥ or ⊘)
- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1
In file list, select file ➡ ✉

2
Slide Show ➡ $\odot$
- Slide Show starts.

3
$\odot$ ➡ Slide Show stops

Changing Interval
In ③, ✉ ➡ *Speed* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ Select speed ➡ $\odot$
- When Speed is set to *Manual*, press $\odot$/⍟#⍟ or ⍟✳⍟ to advance or reverse frame.

2

Basic Operations

2-22

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

1 ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

2 ⊠
If *Download* is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to **4**.

3 *Manage Items* ➡ ●

> Manage Items
> Sort
> Rename
> Create Folder
> Change List View
> Check All

4 *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Renaming Folders
After **1**, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡
Manage Items ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡
● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
● Assign different names to folders within a layer.

Moving Files

Some files may not be moved.

1 In file list, select file ➡ ⊠

2 *Move* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●

3 Select folder ➡ ●

4 *Move here* ➡ ●

Copying Files
[File List] Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Copy*
➡ ● ➡ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➡
● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Copy here* ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Files

1 In file list, select file ➡ ⊠
● Repeat **1** as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with ☑ and press ⊠.)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders.
Only handset folders can be hidden.

1 In file list, select folder ➡ ⊠

2 *Set Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders
[File List] ⊠ ➡ *Unlock Temp.* ➡ ●
➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Advanced

🖑 **Opening file properties** **Renaming files** **Sorting files** **Deleting files & folders** **Canceling Secret** **Handling SVG files** (**P.2-33**)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 930SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.14-22** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

Precautions
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.

Important Memory Card Usage Notes
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off first.

1 **Open cover**

2 **Insert card**

- With logo side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3 **Close cover**

If 🔲 Appears after Power On
- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.

2

Basic Operations

Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◉ *Connectivity* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ●

> Memory Card
> DPOF
> SD Local Contents
> Format Card
> Memory Status

2. *Format Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
   - Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3. **Enter Handset Code ➡ ●**

> Format Memory Card? All the data in the card will be deleted.
> Yes
> No

4. *Yes* ➡ ●
   - To cancel, choose *No* and press ●.

Precaution
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2. ✉ ➡ *Change to MemoryCard* ➡ ●
   - Memory Card Data Folder opens.

3. **Select folder ➡ ●**

4. **Select file ➡ ●**

Advanced

🔋 ●Using HTML files on Memory Card (**P.2-33**)

Standby Window

■ View Setting

Changing display option	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Window* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Window* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● For *Always Off*, pressing ⓢ in Standby opens Calendar.

■ Shortcut & Bookmark Settings (Shortcut Panel)

Assigning shortcuts/ Bookmarks	**Start Here** ⓢ ➡ Select icon ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Shortcuts *Assign Shortcut* ➡ ● ➡ Select menu item ➡ ● ➡ Select function/folder ➡ ●
	Bookmarks *Assign Bookmark* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Managing shortcuts/ Bookmarks	**Start Here** ⓢ ➡ Select icon ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Deleting shortcuts/Bookmarks *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Changing shortcut/bookmark order *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select icon ➡ ✉ (Up) or ⱚ (Down) ➡ ●

■ News Settings

Adding news items	**Start Here** ⓢ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Add News* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Shortcut Panel & Calendar/Tag Panel *S! Quick News List* ➡ ● ➡ 登録はこちら ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Select genre ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
	News Panel Select genre ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	ⓢ ➡ ✉ ➡ *News Display* ➡ ● ➡ *News Speed* ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ● ● Available for Shortcut Panel and Calendar/Tag Panel.
Showing unread news only	ⓢ ➡ ✉ ➡ *News Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Target News* ➡ ● ➡ *Unread Only* ➡ ● ● Available for Shortcut Panel and Calendar/Tag Panel.
Changing news image setting	**Start Here** ⓢ ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Showing Images on Shortcut Panel & Calendar/Tag Panel *News Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Image* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when only news area is set to appear on the Panel.
	Hiding Images on News Panel *Display Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Updating news items manually	**One Item** ⟨⟩ ➡ Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manual Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Reload This News* ➡ ● **All Items** ⟨⟩ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manual Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Reload All* ➡ ● ● Available for News Panel.

■ **Member Settings**

Assigning members	**Shortcut Panel** ⟨⟩ ➡ Select member field ➡ ✉ ➡ *Assign Member* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select entry/member ➡ ● **Member Panel** ⟨⟩ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Assign Member* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select entry/member ➡ ● ➡ *(Empty)* ➡ ● ● Select a member instead of *(Empty)* to replace the member.
Managing members	Start Here ⟨⟩ ➡ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ See below **Deleting Members** *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Changing Member Order** *Move* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ (Up) or ✉ (Down) ➡ ● **Changing Member Icons** *Change Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ● ● Available for Shortcut Panel and Member Panel.

Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability

Accessing Customized Screen source sites	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ ✉ ➡ *Web Access* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Applying preset Customized Screen	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Customize* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *Preset Screens* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ●
Canceling Customized Screen	● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling S! Familiar Usability	● ➡ ✉ ➡ *S!おなじみ操作解除* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability unconditionally	⌨ ➡ *Main Menu* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Customize* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting Customized Screens	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

2

Basic Operations

2-27

2

Basic Operations

Text Entry

Using Character Codes	In a text entry window (Character Code mode), enter four digits (P.14-11)
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Input Method* ▶ ● ▶ *Pager Code* ▶ ● ● Return to text entry window and enter two digits (**P.14-10**).
Inserting line breaks	**At the End of Text** In a text entry window, ⓠ **Mid-Entry** In a text entry window, ⸬#⸭ ▶ ∉ (▶ ●)
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window, ⓒ
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Insert/Font Size* ▶ ● ▶ *Font Size* ▶ ● ▶ Select size ▶ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Predictive* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Previous Usage* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
Disabling emoticon/ Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *EmoticonWordLink* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Set Low Priority* ▶ ● ▶ Select type ▶ ● (☑ appears) ▶ ᐢ

Using Keypad to enter words/ phrases from suggestion list	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Select Candidate* ▶ ● ▶ *Enable 1-9, 0, ⸬, #* ▶ ●
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Input/Conversion* ▶ ● ▶ *Reset Log* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Undo/Recover* ▶ ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window, ☑ ▶ *Insert/Font Size* ▶ ● ▶ *Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ● ▶ Select item ▶ ●

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ In Phone Settings menu, *User Dictionary* ▶ ● ▶ *Saved Word List* ▶ ● ▶ Select word ▶ ☑ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Dictionary

Viewing dictionary information	`#0` ➡ `✉` ➡ *Information* ➡ `●`
Changing Font Size	`#0` ➡ `✉` ➡ *Font Size* ➡ `●` ➡ Select size ➡ `●`
Copying Index Word	`#0` ➡ Enter reading (or spelling) ➡ Select word ➡ `●` ➡ `✉` ➡ *Copy Index Word* ➡ `●`
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text, `#0` ➡ `✉` ➡ *By Copy Text* ➡ `●` ➡ *Search* ➡ `●` ➡ Select word ➡ `●`
Deleting History & bookmarks	Start Here `#0` ➡ `✉` ➡ *History* or *Bookmark List* ➡ `●` ➡ See below
	One Word Select word ➡ `✉` ➡ *Delete* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`
	All Words `✉` ➡ *Delete All* ➡ `●` ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`
Updating dictionary list	`#0` ➡ `🔍` ➡ *ネット辞書* ➡ `●` ➡ `✉` ➡ *Update Dictionaries* ➡ `●` ➡ *Yes* ➡ `●`

Phone Book

■ View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	`●` ➡ *Phone* ➡ `●` ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *View Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *List Only* ➡ `●`
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	Start Here `●` ➡ *Phone* ➡ `●` ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ `●` ➡ *Picture:* ➡ `●` ➡ See below
	Assigning Images *Assign Picture* ➡ `●` ➡ Select image ➡ `●`
	Capturing Images *Take Picture* ➡ `●` ➡ Frame image on Display ➡ `●` ➡ `●`
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	`●` ➡ *Phone* ➡ `●` ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ `●` ➡ *New Number Prompt* ➡ `●` ➡ *Incoming Call* or *Outgoing Call* ➡ `●` ➡ *Off* ➡ `●`

2

Basic Operations

■ **Phone Book Entry**

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Saving other information</td><td>Start Here ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Add New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Address**
Address: ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Complete field ➜ ● ➜ 〝</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Office**
Office: ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Enter text ➜ ● ➜ 〝</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Homepage**
Homepage: ➜ ● ➜ Enter URL ➜ ● ➜ Select type ➜ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Note**
Note: ➜ ● ➜ Enter text ➜ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Birthday**
Birthday: ➜ ● ➜ Enter date ➜ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Setting Light Color</td><td>● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Add New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ Select item, e.g., *Light-Voice Call:* ➜ ● ➜ *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ➜ *Light Color* ➜ ● ➜ Select color ➜ ● ➜ CLEAR/BACK</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changing vibration pattern</td><td>● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Add New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ Select item, e.g., *Vibration-Message:* ➜ ● ➜ *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ➜ *Vibration Pattern* ➜ ● ➜ Select pattern ➜ ● ➜ CLEAR/BACK</td></tr>
<tr><td>Editing Phone Book entries</td><td>Ⓠ ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ✉ ➜ *Edit* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Edit ➜ ● ➜ 〝
● Edit Reading after editing names.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td>Setting incoming mail ring time</td><td>Ⓠ ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ✉ ➜ *Edit* ➜ ● ➜ *Tone-New Message:* ➜ ● ➜ *Duration* ➜ ● ➜ Enter time ➜ ● ➜ 〝
● Available for compatible ringtones.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Renaming Categories</td><td>● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Category Control* ➜ ● ➜ Select Category ➜ ● ➜ *Edit Name* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Moving Categories</td><td>● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Category Control* ➜ ● ➜ Select Category ➜ 〝 ➜ Select target location ➜ ●
● View for *By Category* Phone Book search changes accordingly.</td></tr>
</table>

■ **Using Entries**

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Messaging via Phone Book</td><td>Start Here Ⓠ ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Phone Numbers**
Select phone number ➜ ● ➜ *Create Message* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ 〝</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Mail Address**
Select address ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ 〝</td></tr>
<tr><td>Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book</td><td>Ⓠ ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ Select phone number ➜ ● ➜ *Deco. Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Deco. Call File* ➜ ● ➜ *Deco. Call Folder* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ● ➜ *Outgoing Type* ➜ ● ➜ *Dialed Call* or *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ ✉
● When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, a confirmation appears.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book</td><td>Ⓠ ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ Select phone number ➜ ● ➜ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➜ ● ➜ ●
● Set My Status to *Online* first.</td></tr>
</table>

Placing international calls via Phone Book	ⓠ ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select phone number ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Int'l Call* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select country ➡ ⓞ ➡ 🔄

■ **Manage Entries**

Deleting Phone Book entries	**One Entry** ⓠ ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⓞ
	All Entries ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select entry type ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⓞ
Checking memory status	ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ⓞ
Copying Phone Book entries	**One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)** ⓠ ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Copy Entry to USIM* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⓞ
	One Entry (USIM Card → Handset) ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Select Phone Book* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *USIM Memory* ➡ ⓞ ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Copy Entry to Phone* ➡ ⓞ
	All Entries ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Copy All* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select method ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⓞ ● If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.

Editing Categories on USIM Card	[Start Here] ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Category Control* ➡ ⓞ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change to USIM* ➡ ⓞ ➡ See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⓞ
	Moving Categories Select Category ➡ ✉ ➡ Select target location ➡ ⓞ
	Changing Icons Select Category ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ⓞ
Changing default storage media for new entries	ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Save New Entry* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *USIM Memory* or *Ask Each Time* ➡ ⓞ
Switching reference Phone Book	ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Select Phone Book* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *USIM Memory* or *Both* ➡ ⓞ

■ **Mode Settings**
Activate Double Number first.

Changing mode of all entries at once	ⓞ ➡ *Phone* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Change Mode(All)* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select mode ➡ ⓞ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⓞ
Changing mode of multiple entries	ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Multiple Selection* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⓞ (☑/☐) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Mode* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select mode ➡ ⓞ
Changing mode of entries by Category	ⓠ ➡ Select Category ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ⓞ ➡ *Change Mode(Category)* ➡ ⓞ ➡ Select mode ➡ ⓞ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⓞ ● Set search method to *By Category* first.

2

Basic Operations

Data Folder

■ File/Folder View Settings
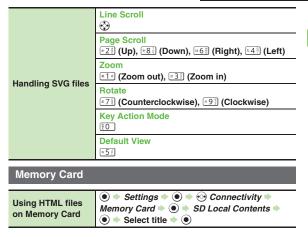
Switching file list view	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ☑ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Change List View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing image quality	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Image Quality* (*Picture Quality* for Flash® files) ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Changing Slide Show settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Slide Show* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ See below **Playing Once** *Repeat* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● **Playing Music** *BGM Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● **Changing Music** *BGM Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Play Ring Tones* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Disabling automatic scroll of panorama images	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Switch Autoscroll* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Hiding Softkeys in image view	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *SW GuideDisplay* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Set as Wallpaper* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.
Using files as ringtones	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Set as Ringtone* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● When prompted, enter ring time and press ●. ● When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.
Using files as ringvideos	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Set as Ring Video* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● For *For New Message* or *For New PC Mail*, enter ring time and press ●.
Saving Phone Book entries	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ☑ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Take Picture*, *Record Video* or *Record Voice* ➡ ●

■ Managing Files/Folders

Opening file properties	● ➧ *Data Folder* ➧ ● ➧ Select folder ➧ ● ➧ Select file ➧ ☒ ➧ *Details* ➧ ●
Renaming files	● ➧ *Data Folder* ➧ ● ➧ Select folder ➧ ● ➧ Select file ➧ ☒ ➧ *Manage Items* ➧ ● ➧ *Rename* ➧ ● ➧ Enter name ➧ ●
Sorting files	● ➧ *Data Folder* ➧ ● ➧ Select folder ➧ ● ➧ ☒ ➧ *Manage Items* ➧ ● ➧ *Sort* ➧ ● ➧ Select method ➧ ● ● To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.
Deleting files & folders	Start Here ● ➧ *Data Folder* ➧ ● ➧ Select folder ➧ See below **Single Files** ● ➧ Select file ➧ ☒ ➧ *Delete* ➧ ● ➧ *Yes* ➧ ● **Folder & Files Within** ☒ ➧ *Delete* ➧ ● ➧ Enter Handset Code ➧ ● ➧ *Yes* ➧ ●
Canceling Secret	Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select folder ➧ ☒ ➧ *Unset Secret* ➧ ● ➧ Enter Handset Code ➧ ●

Handling SVG files	**Line Scroll** ⊛ **Page Scroll** ⎚2⎚ (Up), ⎚8⎚ (Down), ⎚6⎚ (Right), ⎚4⎚ (Left) **Zoom** ⎚1⎚ (Zoom out), ⎚3⎚ (Zoom in) **Rotate** ⎚7⎚ (Counterclockwise), ⎚9⎚ (Clockwise) **Key Action Mode** ⎚0⎚ **Default View** ⎚5⎚

Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card	● ➧ *Settings* ➧ ● ➧ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➧ *Memory Card* ➧ ● ➧ *SD Local Contents* ➧ ● ➧ Select title ➧ ●

Standby Window

? Shortcut/member icons do not appear on Shortcut Panel

- By default, only news area is set to appear on Shortcut Panel. Access *Select Item* via Options menu and select *Shortcut* or *Member* as needed.

Customized Screen

? Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

? Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

? Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

? Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.

Data Folder

? **Cannot copy files properly**

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)

? **Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.**

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

? **Cannot sort files properly**

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.

? **What should I be careful about when entering file names?**

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, |, ?, * and " are not supported.

3

Calling

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report) 930SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with *184*). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Max Cost (P.3-18)	Possible
Function Lock (P.11-2)	
Outgoing Calls (P.3-20)	
Offline Mode (P.1-16)	Restricted
Keypad Lock (P.1-18)	
PIN Entry (P.11-2)	

Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

```
Voice Call...
```

Incoming Voice Call Window

1 📞 **to accept the call**
 ● Call connects.
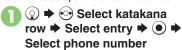
2 ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Muting Ringer Temporarily
 [Incoming Voice Call Window] 📷
After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers
● Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

Follow these steps to dial via Phone Book:

1 ⊙ ➡ ⊙ **Select katakana row** ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● ➡ **Select phone number**

2 📞
 ● Wait for connection.

```
CallTime 0:02
```

3 ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.1-19)
 After ❶, ● ➡ *Select Line(Voice)* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●
Earpiece Volume
 During a call, ◎ or ◀▶

Advanced

✋ ●Rejecting calls ●Placing calls on hold ●Answering with Headphones (**P.3-13**)
 ●Placing calls by entering phone numbers ●Adjusting Earpiece Volume ●Sending/blocking Caller ID (**P.3-14**)
 ●Muting Microphone ●Recording caller voice (Voice Call only) (And more on **P.3-15**)

Placing an International Call

1. **Enter phone number with area code ➜ ☑**

2. *Int'l Call* ➜ ●

3. **Select country ➜ ● ➜ 🔄**
   - Handset dials the number.

4. **📱 ➜ Call ends**

Calling Unlisted Countries
   In ❸, *Enter Code* ➜ ● ➜ Enter country code ➜ ● ➜ 🔄

Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad.
Apply for Global Roaming beforehand.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

1. **Enter phone number with area code ➜ ☑**

2. *Int'l Call* ➜ ● ➜ 日本(JPN) ➜ ● ➜ 🔄
   - Handset dials the number.

3. **📱 ➜ Call ends**

Calling SoftBank Handsets
- In ❷, always select 日本(JPN).

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country
- Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on **P.3-3**.

Calls Overseas
- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset.
Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1. **🔙 (Long)**
   - Answer Phone is set (📧 appears).

Canceling Answer Phone
   🔙 (Long)
Answering Calls while Recording
- No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1. **🔙**
   - Playback ends automatically after all messages have played.

■ Playback Operations

Volume Control	🔄 or ◀▶
Replay/ Skip Backward	◉
Stop	🔙
Skip Forward	● or ◉
Delete	☑ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Advanced
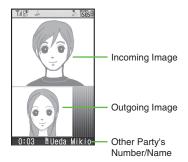
✎ ●Recording caller messages ●Changing ring time ●Sampling outgoing message ●Muting Earpiece (**P.3-13**)
●Placing calls by entering country code directly ●Adding a country code automatically when placing calls ●Adding/changing/deleting country codes (And more on **P.3-14**)

Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets.

Window Description

- Incoming Image
- Outgoing Image
- Other Party's Number/Name

`0:03  Ueda Mikio`

▊ Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	🖉
Toggle Outgoing Image	●
Open Help	✉ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

Important Video Call Usage Notes
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

Incoming Video Call Window

1 🕾 **to accept the call**

2 ☎ ➡ **Call ends**
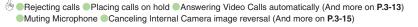
Answering without Camera Image
  [Incoming Video Call Window] ● ➡
  Yes ➡ ●
  ■ Video Call charges apply to the caller.
After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers
- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Advanced

📖 ●Rejecting calls ●Placing calls on hold ●Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on **P.3-13**)
●Muting Microphone ●Canceling Internal Camera image reversal (And more on **P.3-15**)
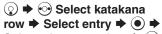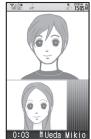
Placing a Video Call

Follow these steps to dial via Phone Book:

1️⃣ ⊙ ➡ ⊙ **Select katakana row** ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● ➡ **Select phone number** ➡ ●

2️⃣ *Video Call* ➡ ●

`0:03  ⁂Ueda Mikio`

● Call is accepted and image appears.

3️⃣ ☎ ➡ **Call ends**

Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.1-19)
After 1️⃣, *Select Line(Video)* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

Advanced

🔩 ●Placing calls by entering phone numbers ●Adjusting Earpiece Volume ●Sending/blocking Caller ID (**P.3-14**)
●Sending Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls ●Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ●Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on **P.3-20** - **3-21**)

Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.
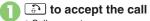
Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.
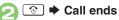
Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

1 📞 **to accept the call**
- Call connects.

2 ☎ ➜ **Call ends**
- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

Note
- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

1 **Enter phone number ➜ ✉ ➜ *Deco. Call* ➜ ●**

2 *Deco. Call File* ➜ ●
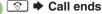
3 *Deco. Call Folder* ➜ ● ➜ **Select file ➜ ●**
- To check selected file, press ⌨.

4 ✉
- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

5 ☎ ➜ **Call ends**
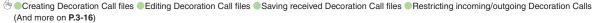
Placing Your First Decoration Call
- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
  - To disable confirmation, press ✉ (□).
Placing Decoration Video Calls
  After 3, *Outgoing Type* ➜ ● ➜ *Video Call* ➜ ● ➜ 4

Advanced

✋ ●Creating Decoration Call files ●Editing Decoration Call files ●Saving received Decoration Call files ●Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
(And more on **P.3-16**)

3-7

Speed Dial

3

Calling
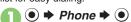
Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

1 ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ●

2 *Speed Dial/Mail* ➜ ●

3 Select number ➜ ● ➜ ☉ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ●

4 Select phone number ➜ ●

> Speed Dial/Mail
> Ueda Mikio
> Select mail address
> for speed mail.
> ✱ 090392XXXX1
> ✉ aabb@xxx.yyy
> ▶ Do not Assign

● Select mail address prompt appears.

5 *Do not Assign* ➜ ● To save mail address instead, select one and press ●.

6 ☒ ➜ **Saved**
● To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3** - **5**.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial
● Save a phone number to 🔟.
Canceling Speed Dial Entries
In **3**, select entry ➜ ☒ ➜ *Remove Selected* or *Remove All* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
■ Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

1 🔟 - ⑨⑨ (entry number)

2 📞

Placing Video Calls
In **2**, ● ➜ *Speed Video* ➜ ●
Placing Decoration Calls
In **2**, ● ➜ *Speed Deco. Call* ➜ ● ➜ *Deco. Call File* ➜ Select/create file ➜ ☒
Using Headphones
● In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in 🔟. To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.

Call Log

Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 [📞]

```
Yill①  ┷              0000M  15:05
              All Calls
        📞    📞    📞    📞
  📞 📞 Ueda Mikio
            XX/XX/XX 15:05
  📖 📖 Kondo Koichi
            XX/XX/XX 12:00
  📖 📖 090392XXXX7
            XX/XX/XX 11:28
```

- All Calls opens; press ⊙ to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Frequency and then Received Calls.
- When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), Line indicators appear except for Dialed Frequency.

2 Select record ➡ ●
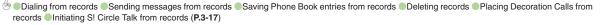
- Select Decoration Call record and press ⊠ to open the corresponding file.

When the Same Number is Dialed More Than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

Advanced

🖑 ●Dialing from records ●Sending messages from records ●Saving Phone Book entries from records ●Deleting records ●Placing Decoration Calls from records ●Initiating S! Circle Talk from records (**P.3-17**)

Call Time & Call Cost

3

Calling
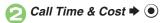
Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call*

2. *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ●

   ```
   Call Time&Cost
   Call Timers
   Data Counter
   Call Costs
   ```
   Call Time & Cost Menu

3. *Call Timers* ➡ ●

   ```
   Call Timers
   Dialed Calls
   Received Calls
   Clear Timers
   ```

4. *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls* ➡ ●

Call Cost

Check estimated call charges of the most recent call and all calls.

Call Costs (including Max Cost) may be unavailable depending on subscription status.

1. In Call Time & Cost menu, *Call Costs* ➡ ●

2. *Show Call Cost* ➡ ●

   ```
   Show Call Cost

   Last Call Cost:
              YEN XXX


   All Calls Costs:
              YEN XXXX
   ```

Advanced

🔒 ●Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls ●Showing Call Cost after each call ●Limiting Call Costs ●Checking packet transmission volume (And more on **P.3-17** - **3-18**)

3-10

Optional Services
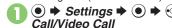
Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls

*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1. ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ◌ *Call/Video Call*

2. *Voicemail/Divert* ➜ ●

   ```
   ▼il        1505
        Voicemail
   Voicemail
   Diverts
   Cancel All
   Status
   ```
   Voicemail/Divert Menu
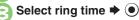
3. *Diverts* ➜ ● ➜ Select call type ➜ ●

4. *No Answer* ➜ ●

   ```
   ▼il        1505
      Forward to
   Phone Book
   Enter Number
   ```

5. *Phone Book* ➜ ● ➜ ◌ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ●

6. Select phone number ➜ ●
   ● Omit **5** if only one number is saved.

7. ●

8. Select ring time ➜ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In **4**, *Always* ➜ ● ➜ **6** - **7**

Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In **5**, *Enter Number* ➜ ● ➜ Enter phone number ➜ ● ➜ Select ring time ➜ ●

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1. In Voicemail/Divert menu, *Voicemail* ➜ ● ➜ *Activate* ➜ ●

   ```
   ▼il        1505
       Activate
   Always
   No Answer
   ```

2. *No Answer* ➜ ● ➜ Select ring time ➜ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In **2**, *Always* ➜ ●

Advanced

⊕ ●Checking service status (**P.3-18**)
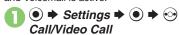
Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call*

> ```
> Call/Video Call
> Call Time & Cost
> Answer Phone
> Voicemail/Divert
> Video Call
> ```
> Call/Video Call Menu

2 [out] *Missed Calls* ➡ ● ➡ ●
 • When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), select a line and press ●.
 • Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

1 In Call/Video Call menu, *Voicemail/Divert* ➡ ●

> ```
> Voicemail
> Voicemail
> Diverts
> Cancel All
> Status
> ```
> Voicemail/Divert Menu

2 *Voicemail* ➡ ●
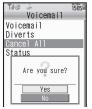
3 *Call Voicemail* ➡ ●
 • When using Double Number in Dual Mode, select a line and press ●.
 • Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Hiding New Voicemail Message Indicator
In 3, *Delete Icon* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, *Cancel All* ➡ ●

> ```
> Voicemail
> Voicemail
> Diverts
> Cancel All
> Status
>    Are you sure?
>      Yes
>      No
> ```

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

Advanced

🏠 ●Activating Call Waiting ●Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ●Rejecting calls by number ●Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ●Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on **P.3-18** - **3-20**)

Receiving a Call

■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	**Voice Call** When a call arrives, ☑ ➡ *Reject* ➡ ●
	Video Call When a call arrives, ☒
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, ☎ ● Press ☎ to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button ● To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives, ☑ ➡ *Record Message* ➡ ●
Changing ring time	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Sampling outgoing message	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Guidance Msg* ➡ ● ● Press ☒ to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Volume* ➡ ● ➡ *Silent* ➡ ●

■ Remote Monitor

Answering Video Calls automatically	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Saving Numbers from Phone Book *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ *From Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ● To enter a phone number directly, select *<Empty>* and press ●.
	Saving Numbers from Call Log *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
	Activating Remote Monitor *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● A tone sounds for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.) ● Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
Editing Auto Answer List	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Answer List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing Numbers Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●
	Deleting Entries Select entry ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Changing ring time	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

3

Calling

Placing a Call

■ Basic Operations

Placing calls by entering phone numbers	**Voice Call** Enter phone number with area code ➡ ☎ ● To correct entry, use ⊙ to place cursor under the digit and press ⌫. To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press ⌫.
	Video Call Enter phone number with area code ➡ ● ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Earpiece Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ✉ ➡ *Hide My ID* or *Show My ID* ➡ ●

■ International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	⁂⁂ (**+** appears) ➡ Enter country code ➡ Enter phone number with area code ➡ ☎ ● Omit the first *0* of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.

Adding a country code automatically when placing calls	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Add Code* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Activating Auto Add Code *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless **+** is included.
	Selecting a Country from List *Country Code* ➡ ● ➡ Select country ➡ ●
	Specifying a Country Code *Country Code* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter Code* ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ●
Saving frequently used international prefix	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Int'l Prefix* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter prefix ➡ ●
Adding/changing/ deleting country codes	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Country Codes* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ●
	Changing Select country ➡ ● ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ●
	Deleting Select country ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

3

Calling

During a Call

Muting Microphone	**Voice Call** During a call, ✆ (press again to cancel) **Video Call** During a call, ✉ ➜ *Mute* ➜ ● ● To cancel, select *Unmute*.
Recording caller voice (Voice Call only)	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Record Caller Voice* ➜ ● ➜ **Recording starts** ➜ ● ➜ **Recording ends**
Activating/ canceling Loudspeaker	**Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call** During a call, ● ➜ While message appears, ● ● To cancel, press ●. **Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call** During a call, ✆ (press again to activate)
Switching sound output	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Transfer Audio* ➜ ● ➜ *To Phone* or *To Bluetooth* ➜ ●
Opening Phone Book	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Phone Book* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ Select katakana row ➜ Select entry ➜ ● ● Press ☎ twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Phone Book* ➜ ● ➜ ✉ ➜ *Add New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ **Complete fields** ➜ ✆ ● Press ☎ to return to call window.
Disabling touch tone signaling	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Disable DTMF* ➜ ●

Placing calls on hold	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Hold* ➜ ● ● Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. ● To resume Voice Calls, press ✉, select *Retrieve* and press ●. ● To resume Video Calls, press ✆.
Opening messages (Voice Call only)	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Messaging* ➜ ● ➜ Select Messaging folder ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select message ➜ ● ● Press ☎ three times to return to call window.
Creating messages (Voice Call only)	During a call, ✉ ➜ *Messaging* ➜ ● ➜ *Create Message* or *Create New SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ✆
Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a Video Call, ✉ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Exposure* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level ➜ ● ● Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
Canceling Internal Camera image reversal	During a Video Call, ✉ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Mirror Image* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●

3

Calling

3-15

Decoration Call

Creating Decoration Call files	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ✉ ➡ *Create New File* ➡ ● ➡ *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ *Images* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Using Still Images *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
	Using Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
	Using Animation *Flash®* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Editing Decoration Call files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save as New* or *Overwrite* ➡ ● ● For *Save as New*, select *Save here* and press ●.
Saving received Decoration Call files	⌕ ➡ ⟐ Select type ➡ Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ *Save File* ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⟐ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⟐ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Play in Receiving* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Create New File* ➡ ● ➡ *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ *Images* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Capturing Still Images *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Take Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Capture image ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Combine image with sound as needed.
	Recording Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Video* ➡ ● ➡ Record video ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Removing image/ video/sound	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Removing Image/Video *Images* ➡ ● ➡ *Remove Image* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save as New* or *Overwrite* ➡ ● ● For *Save as New*, select *Save here* and press ●.
	Removing Sound *Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ *Remove Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save as New* or *Overwrite* ➡ ● ● For *Save as New*, select *Save here* and press ●.
Showing options upon Decoration Call failure	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⟐ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Call Log

Dialing from records	**Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)** ⊙ ▶ Select record ▶ 🔊 ● To place Video Calls, press 🖾 instead of 🔊, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
	Calling from Received Call Records ⊚ ▶ Select record ▶ 🔊 ● To place Video Calls, press 🖾 instead of 🔊, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
Sending messages from records	🔊 ▶ ⊚ Select type ▶ Select record ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Create Message* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ 🖳
Saving Phone Book entries from records	🔊 ▶ ⊚ Select type ▶ Select record ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Save to Phone Book* ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ 🖳 ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Deleting records	**One Record** 🔊 ▶ ⊚ Select type ▶ Select record ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
	All Records 🔊 ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Placing Decoration Calls from records	🔊 ▶ ⊚ Select type ▶ Select record ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Deco. Call* ▶ ● ▶ *Deco. Call File* ▶ ● ▶ Select/create file ▶ 🖾
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	🔊 ▶ ⊚ Select type ▶ Select record ▶ 🖾 ▶ *Call S! Circle Talk* ▶ ● ▶ ● ● Set My Status to *Online* first.

Call Time/Call Cost/Data Communication

■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ⊚ *Call/Video Call* ▶ *Minute Minder* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ●
Hiding Call Time during calls	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ⊚ *Call/Video Call* ▶ *Disp. Time/Cost* ▶ ● ▶ *Call Time Counter* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ●
Resetting Call Timers	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ⊚ *Call/Video Call* ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ ● ▶ *Call Timers* ▶ ● ▶ *Clear Timers* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

■ Call Cost

Showing Call Cost after each call	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ⊚ *Call/Video Call* ▶ *Disp. Time/Cost* ▶ ● ▶ *Display Call Cost* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ●
Resetting Call Costs	● ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ ⊚ *Call/Video Call* ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ ● ▶ *Call Costs* ▶ ● ▶ *Show Call Cost* ▶ ● ▶ 🖾 ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Limiting Call Costs	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Costs* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting a Limit
	Max Cost/Residual ➡ ● ➡ 🗑 ➡ *Set* ➡ ● ➡ Enter PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount ➡ ●
	Changing the Limit
	Max Cost/Residual ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ Enter PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount ➡ ●
	Checking Remaining Amount
	Max Cost/Residual ➡ ●
	● May be unavailable depending on subscription status.
Showing amount in another currency	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Costs* ➡ ● ➡ *Cost Units* ➡ ● ➡ 🖂 ➡ Enter PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ Enter currency ➡ ● ➡ Enter exchange rate (per yen) ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ **Data Communication**

Checking packet transmission volume	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Most Recent Volume
	Last Data ➡ ●
	All Volume
	All Data ➡ ●
Resetting Data Counter	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Clear Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Optional Services

■ **All Services**

Checking service status	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ Select service ➡ ● ➡ *Status* ➡ ●
	● For *Call Barring*, select restriction and press ●.

■ **Call Waiting (Contract Required)**

Activating Call Waiting	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Waiting* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	A tone sounds during a Voice Call ➡ 📞
	● Press 📞 to switch between lines.
	● Press 📞 to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ **Group Calling (Contract Required)**

Opening another line during a call	During a Voice Call, enter phone number ➡ 📞
	● Long Press 📞 to select a number from Call Log records.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	During a Voice Call, 📞
	● Press 📞 to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	While switching between lines, 🖂 ➡ *Group Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Conference All* ➡ ●
Switching to private conversation during Group Calling	During a Voice Call, select number/name ➡ ● ➡ *Private* ➡ ●
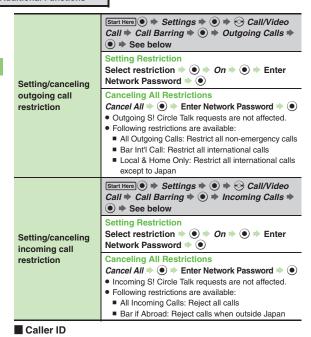
3

Calling

■ Call Barring

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="2">**Rejecting calls by number**</td>
<td>Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ❂ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Black List* ➡ ● ➡ See below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Saving Numbers**
Set Reject Number ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ●
● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), select a line type and press ●.</td>
</tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>**Activating Black List**
Switch On/Off ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="3">**Rejecting calls without designating numbers**</td>
<td>Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ❂ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ See below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Calls from Unsaved Numbers**
Unknown ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Calls with No/Undisplayable Caller ID or from Public Phones**
Withheld ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr>
<td>**Changing Network Password**</td>
<td>● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ❂ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Change NW Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter current Network Password ➡ ● ➡ Enter new Network Password ➡ ● ➡ Re-enter new Network Password ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="4">**Designating numbers to reject from saved information**</td>
<td>Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ❂ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Black List* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Reject Number* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ✉ ➡ See below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**From Phone Book**
Ph. Book List ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**From Call Log Records**
From Call Log ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**From S! Friend's Status Member List**
From Friend's Status ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="3">**Editing Black List**</td>
<td>Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ❂ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Rejected Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Black List* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Reject Number* ➡ ● ➡ See below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Editing Numbers**
Select number/name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**Deleting Numbers**
Select number/name ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●</td>
</tr>
</table>

Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Outgoing Calls* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Restriction Select restriction ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ ●
	Canceling All Restrictions *Cancel All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ ● ● Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls ■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls ■ Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Incoming Calls* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Restriction Select restriction ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ ●
	Canceling All Restrictions *Cancel All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ ● ● Incoming S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls ■ Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan

■ **Caller ID**

Showing/hiding Caller ID	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Show My Number* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ●

Settings

■ **Voice Call**

Answering Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Auto Answer* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Activating Auto Answer *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.
	Changing Ring Time *Answer Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

■ **Video Call**

Sending Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Camera Picture* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Alternative Image *Default Image* ➡ ● ➡ *AlternativeImage* ➡ ●
	Changing Alternative Image *Alternative Image* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.
Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Incoming Picture* or *Outgoing Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

3

Calling

Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Hold Guidance Pict* ➡ ● ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.
Setting Backlight status	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ● ● Selecting *Normal Setting* applies Display Backlight setting.
Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Mute Microphone* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

3

Calling

3

Calling

Receiving a Call

Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call

Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

Cannot place call

- If 🖳 appears, cancel Keypad Lock (**P.1-18**).
- If 🖳 appears, cancel Function Lock (**P.11-2**).
- If 🖳 appears, cancel Offline Mode (**P.1-16**).

Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone

- Did you include the area code or the first *0*? Dial the number including the area code or *0*.
- Handset may be out-of-range (out appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (**P.3-14**).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (**P.3-15**) to *To Phone*.

Other

Talk Time on Display seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with *1*, *00*, *0120* or *0990*? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.

4

Messaging

Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

Send Graphic Mail; set Feeling Setting in subject field when messaging SoftBank handsets.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 930SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

■ **Available Entry Items**

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

● A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
● For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset automatically resends unsent messages up to two times. Cancel to disable (**P.4-28**).

Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.
For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**).

Changing Address

1 ✉ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ●

2 *Address Settings* ➜ ●
- Handset connects to the Internet. Select *English* and press ●, then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.

```
        Information
    ✉ 1 Message




  Clear      🔙      Exit
```

To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 *Message* ➜ ●

```
  📶◎⊖      15:05
      Received Msg.
  Mail        2/   2
  ✉ Information
  📞 Kimura Tetsuya
```

2 *Information* ➜ ●

```
  📶◎⊖      15:05
      Received Msg.
  Mail        2/   2
  ✉ Information
  📞 Kimura Tetsuya
  ┌─────────────┐
  │The information│
  │which notifies │
  │your Mail Address│
  │is included in │
  │this message.  │
  ├─────────────┤
  │     Yes      │
  │     No       │
  └─────────────┘
```

3 *Yes* ➜ ●

```
  📶◎⊖      15:05
      Edit My Detail
  Last Name:

  First Name:

  Reading-Last Name:

  Reading-FirstName:

  Tel 1My:
  📳 090392XXXX5
  Add Phone Number:

  Email 1My:
  ✉ ccc@xxx.yyy
```

4 ⚿

✉
4-3

Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:
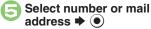
1 ✉ ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ●
When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ●.

S! Mail Composition Window

2 Select recipient field ➡ ●

3 *Phone Book* ➡ ●

4 ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

5 Select number or mail address ➡ ●
● Omit **5** if only one number or address is saved.
● When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

6 Select subject field ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ●

7 📃 *Text* ➡ ●

Text Entry Window

8 Enter message ➡ ●

S! Mail Composition Window

9 ⌨ ➡ **Transmission starts**
● To cancel, press ⌨ during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.
Previewing Outgoing Message
After **8**, ✉ ➡ *Preview Message* ➡ ●
Pictogram Entry
● In Pictogram List, press ▨ to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
● Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.
Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.1-19)
[S! Mail Composition Window] ✉ ➡ *Switch Line* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Inserting signature automatically ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.4-18**)
●Saving without sending ●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.4-19** - **4-20**)
●Requesting Delivery Report for all messages ●Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages ●Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on **P.4-28**)

4

Messaging

Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

1 **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message,** ⊙ ∅ *Attach*

> ```
> Yıl⊕ ↔                    15:05
> ⊠S! Mail        Size 383B
> ♀ Ueda Mikio
> ▤ Wedding
>   ▤Text      ∅Attach
> 📄 Attach File
> ```

2 *Attach File* ➡ ●

> ```
> Yıl⊕ ↔                    15:05
>       Attach File
> Picture
> Sound
> Video
> Flash®
> ```

3 *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ●

4 **Select file** ➡ ●

When a size list appears, select attachment size and press ●.

> ```
> Yıl⊕ ↔                    15:05
> ⊠S! Mail        Size 93KB
> ♀ Ueda Mikio
> ▤ Wedding
>   ▤Text      ⊕Attach
> 📄 Attach File
> 🖼 XXXXXX_XXXXXX. ...
>                        92KB
> ```

Attach File Window

● Repeat 2 - 4 to attach more files.

5 ☒ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files

● In 3, select a folder other than *Picture* and press ●, then select a file.

Sending Feeling Mail

1 **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message,** ⊠ ➡ *Feeling Settings* ➡ ●

> ```
> Yıl⊕ ↔                    15:05
>       Feeling Setting
> ❤ Happy/Glad
> ⊚ OK/Good
> ♥ Sad/Sorry
> ☒ NG/Bad
> ✎ Imp./Notice
> ```

2 **Select category, e.g.,** *Happy/Glad* ➡ ●

3 **Select item, e.g.,** *I Love You* ➡ ●

> ```
> Yıl⊕ ↔                    15:05
> ⊠S! Mail        Size 404B
> ♀ Ueda Mikio
> ▤ ✎Wedding
>   ▤Text      ∅Attach
> Please bring a camera an
> d a tripod to Mr. Yamamo
> to and Miss Kawahashi's
> wedding next Sunday. I w
> ill bring a camcorder.
> ```
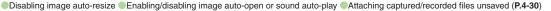
4 ☒ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Feeling Mail
[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ **Select Pictogram, e.g.,** ✎ ➡ 🔲 ➡ ●

Advanced

🔄 ●Capturing/recording and attaching ●Set Auto Play File (**P.4-20**)

●Disabling image auto-resize ●Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play ●Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved (**P.4-30**)

4

Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1 **In text entry window,**
🔲 (Long)

```
ⒶA 色        ᴬ サイズ      画像
  COLOR    SIZE       IMAGE
絵文字      挿入         効果
MY PICT   INSERT      EFFECT
背景       範囲解除     戻す
BG        CANCEL      UNDO
Font Color:            ☐
Select Area            Close Menu
```

Graphic Mail Window

2 *Font Size:* ➔ ⑥

```
         Font Size
  ₐᴬ       A         ᴬ
Font Size:             M
```

3 **Select size ➔ ⑥ ➔ Enter**
text

```
ᵞᵢₗ◎ ╪         1505
Message:
ₐ ⊠ ⟨ A            179/30K
Found a cute puppy!
```

4 🖳 ➔ *BG Color:* ➔ ⑥ ➔
Select color ➔ ⑥

```
ᵞᵢₗ◎ ╪         1505
Message:
ₐ ⊠ ⟨ A            197/30K
Found a cute puppy!
```

5 🖳 ➔ *Picture* ➔ ⑥ ➔
Select folder ➔ ⑥ ➔ Select
file ➔ ⑥

```
Specify point.
By pressing ⊛
to insert.
```

6 **Select location ➔ ⑥ ➔** CLEAR/BACK

7 🖳 ➔ *My Pictogram* ➔ ⑥ ➔
⊠ ➔ **Select file ➔ ⑥ ➔** CLEAR/BACK

```
ᵞᵢₗ◎ ╪         1505
Message:
ₐ ⊠ ⟨ A            305/30K
Found a cute puppy!
```

8 🖳 ➔ *Effect* ➔ ⑥

```
          Effect
 ⌈ᴬ⌉      ⟷        ☰
Blink
```

9 *Scrolling* ➔ ⑥

```
         Scrolling
  A        A        ⟷
Right to Left
```

10 **Select direction ➔ ⑥ ➔**
Enter text

11 ⑥ ➔ 🖳 ➔ **Transmission**
starts

Canceling Last Action
[Graphic Mail Window] *Undo* ➔ ⑥
Cancelling All Graphic Mail Settings
[Graphic Mail Window] *Cancel* ➔ ⑥
➔ *Yes* ➔ ⑥
Saving as Templates
After ⑪, ⑥ ➔ ⊠ ➔ *Save as*
Template ➔ ⑥ ➔ **Enter name** ➔ ⑥
➔ *Save here* ➔ ⑥
■ Only the message text is saved.

Advanced

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:
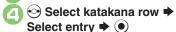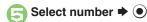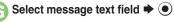
1. ✉ ➡ *Create New SMS* ➡ ●

SMS Composition Window

2. Select recipient field ➡ ●

3. *Phone Book* ➡ ●

4. ☉ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

5. Select number ➡ ●

● Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

6. Select message text field ➡ ●

Text Entry Window

7. Enter message ➡ ●

SMS Composition Window

8. ✉ ➡ Transmission starts

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.
When Message Text Exceeds Limit
● A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:
  Yes ➡ ●
Switching Lines in Dual Mode (P.1-19)
  [SMS Composition Window] ✉ ➡
  Switch Line ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●
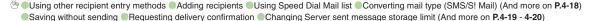
Advanced

🖐 ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Using Speed Dial Mail list ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.4-18**)
●Saving without sending ●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on **P.4-19** - **4-20**)
●Changing Server sent message storage limit ●Changing SMS Server number ●Changing character encoding for composing messages (**P.4-31**)

Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.

● See **P.4-17** to receive PC Mail.

```
      Information
 ✉ 1 Message




 Clear    😊    Exit
```

● By default, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan.

● Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming. Set handset to retrieve initial portion of message text, then manually retrieve complete message as needed.

Delivery Report

● Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
Delivery Report ➡ ● ➡ **Select message with report** ➡ ● ➡ ✉

1 *Message* ➡ ●

```
           1505
   Received Msg.
 Mail          3/  3
 ✉ Ueda Mikio
 ✉ Ueda Mikio
 ✉ Kimura Tetsuya
```
Message List

2 **Select message** ➡ ●

```
           1505
 I've just finishe
 d my work. How ab
 out you


      ?

```

● Message text appears in 3D animation (3D Pictogram).

3 **Select 3D Pictogram option** ➡ ●

● Message window opens.

Mail Notice

● When Message DL is not set to *Auto (All)*, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
 ■ The message was sent to multiple recipients
 ■ Files are attached to the message

Receiving Feeling Mail

● Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

● Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

　Enter or select answer ➡ ●
 ■ Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

● When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Advanced

🖐 ●Opening new mail out of Standby ●Retrieving new S! Mail manually ●Viewing new messages on External Display (And more on **P.4-21**)
●Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ●Hiding graphics above Information window ●Disabling 3D Pictogram (And more on **P.4-28** - **4-29**)
●Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan ●Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad ●Retrieving specified messages (**P.4-29** - **4-30**)

4
Messaging

4-8

Window Description

Message List

Message Type/Status (see below)

Sender or Recipient

Message Text

■ **Message Type/Status**

⊠	Unread	⊠	Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
◆	Read	🗈	Unread Delivery Report
⊠	Sent	ᵇ	Attachments
⊠	Failed	🗈	Protected
◈	Replied	❶	Priority (High)
◈	Forwarded	❶	Priority (Low)
⊠	Send Reservation set	☐	USIM Card SMS

ˢᵐˢ or ᴾᶜ appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (⊠, etc.).

Message Window

Sender or Recipient

Subject (except for SMS)

Received or Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Press `#` to open previous (older) message, or `✳` to open next (newer) one. Use `◀▶` to change font size.

Line Indicators
● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), Line indicators (🅰 and 🅱) appear in message list.

Replying to Messages

1 In message window, `✉`

● Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

2 Complete message ➡ `✉` ➡ **Transmission starts**

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients
After ❶, *To Sender* or *Reply All* ➡ ● ➡ ❷
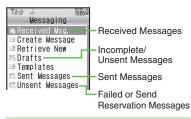
Auto Reply
● Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode.

Advanced

🔧 ●Using linked info ●Saving attachments to Data Folder ●Looking up message text words in dictionaries ●Jumping to message top/bottom ●Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers ●Selecting mail type/quote option ●Opening received message for reference ●Replying quickly using fixed text ●Replying to messages automatically (And more on **P.4-22** - **4-23**)
●Selecting quote option (**P.4-28**)

4-9

4 Messaging

Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.

- Received Messages
- Incomplete/Unsent Messages
- Sent Messages
- Failed or Send Reservation Messages

Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:
  ☑ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

Checking Messages
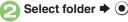
1 ☑ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

Folder List

- When a PC Mail Account exists, folder with the name specified in Account Name appears.
- Select a folder and press ☒ to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press ●.

2 Select folder ➡ ●

Message List

3 Select message ➡ ●
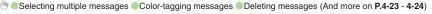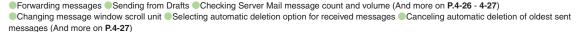
Message Window

Protecting Messages

1 In message list, select message ➡ ☑ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ●

2 *Lock* ➡ ●

Canceling Protection
In **2**, *Unlock* ➡ ●

Advanced

👆 ●Selecting multiple messages ●Color-tagging messages ●Deleting messages (And more on **P.4-23** - **4-24**)
●Forwarding messages ●Sending from Drafts ●Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on **P.4-26** - **4-27**)
●Changing message window scroll unit ●Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages ●Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on **P.4-27**)

Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

1. ⊡ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

2. ⊡ ➡ *Search* ➡ ●

3. *Search All Msg.* ➡ ●

4. Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address or text ➡ ●

Searching within *Mail* Folder
In ❸, *Search Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ❹
Searching Message Text
● Follow these steps to find specific words/ phrases; limit search by character type.
[Message Window] ⊡ ➡ *Search Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
■ Press ⤓ or ⊡ to jump to next/ previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Messages appear in Chat Folders even if source messages are sorted into Secret folders.

1. ⊡ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

2. Select folder ➡ ⊡

> Options
> Rename
> Create New Folder
> Relocate Folder
> Set Secret
> My Folders

3. *Set Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders
After ❶, ⊡ ➡ *Unlock Temp.* ➡ ●
➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

4

Messaging

Advanced

🔧 ●Moving messages manually ●Renaming folders ●Deleting folders ●Adding folders ●Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder ●Canceling Secret ●Searching messages within specified folder (**P.4-24** - **4-25**)

Sorting Messages into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in sender/recipient address, subject or SMS message text.

1. ✉ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

2. Select target folder ➡ ✉

3. *My Folders* ➡ ● ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ●

```
Yıl⊕              1505
     Auto Sort Keys
Sender(Exact)
Sender(Include)
Subject
```

4. *Sender(Exact)* (*Recipient(Exact)* for Sent Messages) ➡ ●

```
Yıl⊕              1505
     Recipient
🏠 Phone Book
📖 Sent Messages
📖 Received Messag…
📖 Select Category
```

5. Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/ address ➡ ●

6. ☎ ➡ Saved

Sort by Partially Matching Text
In ④, *Sender(Include)* (*Recipient(Include)* for Sent Messages) or *Subject* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⑤

Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:

1. ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ●

```
Yıl⊕              1505
     Gen. Settings
Send/Compose

Receive

Anti Spam Measures
```

2. *Anti Spam Measures* ➡ ●

3. Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

```
Yıl⊕              1505
     Anti Spam
■ Unregistered(Mo…
□ Unregistered En…
□ Individual(Comm…
□ Permitted List(…
```

4. *Unregistered(Mobile)* ➡ ● (☑)

5. ☎ ➡ ●

Exempting Messages from Filtering
After ④, *Permitted List(Common)* ➡ ✉ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select key ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address/subject ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ● (☑) ➡ ⑤

When a PC Mail Account Exists
• Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

---

4 Messaging

4-12

Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets. To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

1. ✉ ➡ *Chat Folder* ➡ ●

   ```
   Chat Folder
   Group①
   Group②
   Group③
   ```
   Chat Folder List

2. Select folder ➡ ✉

   ```
   Options
   Add New Member
   Rename
   Create New Folder
   Delete Folder
   Set Secret
   ```

3. *Add New Member* ➡ ●

   ```
   Register Member
   [1]
   [2]
   [3]
   ```
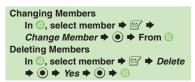
4. Select blank entry ➡ ●
   ● Select saved member to edit number/ address.

5. Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/ address ➡ ●

   ```
   Register Member
   [1]Ueda Mikio
   [2]
   [3]
   ```
   ● Repeat ❹ - ❺ to add members.

6. ☒ ➡ **Saved**

Changing Members
In ❹, select member ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Member* ➡ ● ➡ From ❺

Deleting Members
In ❹, select member ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ❺

Opening Chat Folders

1. In Chat Folder list, select folder ➡ ●

   ```
   Chat Folder
   Group①                    2/  2
   Owner          XX/XX 15:05
   I'll be heading there as...
   Ueda Mikio     XX/XX 15:05
   I've just finished my wo...
   ```

2. Select message ➡ ●

4

Messaging

Advanced

✎ ●Deleting folders ●Deleting all messages ●Resetting Chat Folders (**P.4-25**)

Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

1. ☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

2. *Set Mail Group* ➡ ●

   > Mail Groups
   > ‹Add New Group›

   Mail Group Entry Window

3. *‹Add New Group›* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

4. Select Group ➡ ●

   > Circle
   > ‹Assign New Entry›

5. *‹Assign New Entry›* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

   > Ueda
   > Mikio
   > 090392XXXX1
   > aabb@xxx.yyy

6. Select number or mail address ➡ ●

   > Circle
   > ‹Assign New Entry›
   > Ueda Mikio
   > 090392XXXX1

   ● Omit **5** if only one number or address is saved.
   ● Repeat **5** - **6** to add members.

7. ☒ ➡ Saved

4

Messaging

Advanced

✆ ●Renaming Mail Groups ●Deleting Mail Groups/Group members ●Changing Mail Group members (**P.4-26**)

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.

Save PC mail account information to handset:

- User Name
- Password
- Mail Address
- Incoming Mail Server
- Outgoing Mail Server

Retrieve mail delivered to ISP or Yahoo! accounts.

- Alternatively, use automatic message retrieval option.

Local ISP

SBM Server

Yahoo! Japan

SH
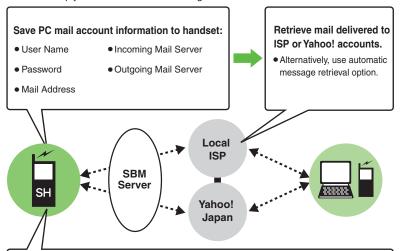
Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.

PC Mail Folder

Received Msg.
Mail
Folder 1
Folder 2
Folder 3
XXXXX
Folder 1
Folder 2
Folder 3

Received Msg.
XXXXX   2/7
Ueda Mikio
Ito Jun

From Ueda
XX/XX 15:05

- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)

Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.

■ **Mandatory Items for Retrieval**
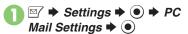
User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

■ **Mandatory Items for Transmission**

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press ⊠.

---

1 ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *PC Mail Settings* ➜ ●

```
Ψ⊪® ⊸        1505
  PC Mail Setting
PC Mail Account

PC Mail DL
Beginning Only
```

2 *PC Mail Account* ➜ ●

```
Ψ⊪® ⊸        1505
  PC Mail Account
〒<Empty>
✉<Empty>
☰<Empty>
✉ Set Quick Yahoo…
```

3 *<Empty>* ➜ ●

4 *Account Name* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●

5 *Set Receiving* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Select/ enter item ➜ ● ➜ ⊠

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.

6 *Set Sending* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Select/enter item ➜ ●

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

---

7 ⊠ ➜ ⊠ ➜ ●

- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses
  In 3, *Set Quick Yahoo! Mail* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ ●
  ■ Follow onscreen instructions.
  ■ Choose *No* to create a new account.
Editing Accounts
  In 3, select account ➜ ● ➜ 4 - 7
Deleting Accounts
  In 3, select account ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

  In 6, *Set Sending* ➜ ● ➜ *Sender Auth.* ➜ ● ➜ *SMTP Auth.* ➜ ⊠ ➜ *User Name* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Password* ➜ ● ➜ Enter password ➜ ● ➜ ⊠ ➜ ⊠ ➜ 7

Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

1 ⊠ ➡ ⊠
 ● To retrieve messages by account, select one and press ●.

2 ⊠

3 Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ●

```
<to be continued> 1KB
Options          More
```
Message Window

● Press ⚹ to retrieve full message.
● Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

When Handset is Set to Retrieve Messages Automatically
● Messages are received after set intervals. (Information window opens.)
Deleting Messages
 [Message List] Select message ➡
 ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option**
 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Checking Received PC Mail

1 ⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* ➡ ●
 ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ●
 ● Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

2 Select message ➡ ●
 ● Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

1 In message window, ⚹
 ● PC Mail Composition window opens.
 ● Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).

2 Complete message ➡ ⚹ ➡ Transmission starts

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text
 [Message Window] ⊠ ➡ *Reply* ➡
 ● ➡ *PC Mail* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⚹
Changing Account for Outgoing Messages
 [PC Mail Composition Window]
 Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ *From:*
 ➡ ● ➡ **Select account** ➡ ●
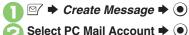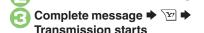
Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

1 ⊠ ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ●

2 Select PC Mail Account ➡ ●

3 Complete message ➡ ⚹ ➡ Transmission starts
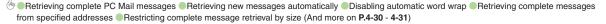
Converting PC Mail to S! Mail
 After 2, ⊠ ➡ *Convert to S! Mail* ➡
 ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Note
● Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

4

Messaging

Advanced

🖑 ●**Retrieving complete PC Mail messages** ●**Retrieving new messages automatically** ●**Disabling automatic word wrap** ●**Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses** ●**Restricting complete message retrieval by size** (And more on **P.4-30** - **4-31**)

Creating Messages

■ Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ●
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ *Add Recipient* ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ● ▶ ⑆
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ Select recipient ▶ ✉ ▶ Select status ▶ ● ● Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
Using Speed Dial Mail list	**Saving Recipients** ✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Speed Dial/Mail* ▶ ● ▶ *<Empty>* ▶ ● ▶ ⊙ Select katakana row ▶ Select entry ▶ ● ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Do not Assign* ▶ ● ▶ ⑆ **Creating Messages** In Standby, ⓪ - ⑨⑨ (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ▶ ✉ ● When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.
Editing/deleting recipients	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ● ▶ See below **Editing Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ● ▶ *Edit* ▶ ● **Deleting a Recipient** Select recipient ▶ ✉ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● **Deleting All Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ✉ ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Editing Speed Dial/Mail list	**Start Here** ✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Speed Dial/Mail* ▶ ● ▶ See below **Editing Entries** Select entry ▶ ✉ ▶ *Change* ▶ ● ▶ Select number/address ▶ ● ▶ Select new number/address ▶ ● ▶ ⑆ **Canceling Entries** Select entry ▶ ✉ ▶ *Remove Selected* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● **Canceling All Entries** ✉ ▶ *Remove All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

■ Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Signature* ▶ ● ▶ *Edit* ▶ ● ▶ Edit signature ▶ ● ▶ *Auto Insert* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ● ● Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. ● Not available for SMS. ● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), set signature by mode.
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window, ✉ ▶ *Insert/Font Size* ▶ ● ▶ *Signature* ▶ ●
Previewing 3D Pictogram	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ▶ *3D Pictogram* ▶ ●
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ▶ *Change to SMS* or *Convert to S! Mail* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Sending Messages

■ Save/Send Reservation/Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, ✉ ➡ *Save to Drafts* ➡ ●
Sending automatically later	**Start Here** After completing message, ✉ ➡ *Send Reservation* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Auto Send when Signal Returns** *Within the Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Designating Send Date/Time (within one week)** *Date & Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling sent S! Mail	✉ ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Sent Cancel* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

■ Msg. Settings

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. ● Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ■ 📧: Delivered, 📧: Unknown, 📧: Failed ● Not available for PC Mail.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select priority ➡ ●
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply Request* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Forward NG* or *Delete NG* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)** Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select number ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit option ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit all options ➡ Select answer ➡ ☼ ➡ ✉ ➡ ✉ **Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)** Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ ✉ **Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)** *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Enter options ➡ Select answer ➡ ☼ ➡ ✉ ➡ ✉ **Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)** *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ ✉
Editing assigned Quiz	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Question* ➡ ● ➡ Edit question/options/answer ➡ ✉ (✉ again after editing options) ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Designating/editing reply-to address	<u>Start Here</u> In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply to Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Designating *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ●
	Editing *Edit Address* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Changing Server sent message storage limit	In Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Msg. Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Expiry Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● • Available for SMS only.

■ Attachments

Capturing/recording and attaching	<u>Start Here</u> In Mail Composition window, ☺*Attach* ➡ *Attach File* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Capturing Still Images *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Take Picture* ➡ ● ➡ ● to shoot ➡ ●
	Recording Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Video* ➡ ● ➡ ● to start recording ➡ ● to stop ➡ *Accept* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ●
	Recording Sounds *Sound* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Voice* ➡ ● ➡ ● to start recording ➡ ● to stop ➡ *Accept* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ●
Set Auto Play File	Select attached file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Auto Play File* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter comment ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ ✉ • Not available for PC Mail.

■ Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail from templates	**Opening Templates from Messaging Menu** ✉ ➡ *Templates* ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✉ • Template size may change when used for creating messages.
	Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window In S! Mail Composition window, ✉ ➡ *Launch Template* ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✉ • Open a template before entering message text.
Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window, 🔅 (Long) ➡ ✉ ➡ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *Font Color:*, *Font Size:* or *Effect* ➡ ● ➡ *Set* ➡ ●
Changing text color	In text entry window, 🔅 (Long) ➡ *Font Color:* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
Inserting background sound	<u>Start Here</u> In text entry window, 🔅 (Long) ➡ *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Inserting *BGM Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
	Deleting *Delete BGM* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Inserting Flash® file	<u>Start Here</u> In text entry window, 🔅 (Long) ➡ **See below**
	Inserting *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ *Flash* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
	Previewing ✉ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Preview* ➡ ●
	Deleting ✉ ➡ Move cursor before Flash® icon ➡ CLEAR/BACK

Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window, ⌫ (Long) ➡ *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ *Line* ➡ ●
Flashing text	**Start Here** In text entry window, ⌫ (Long) ➡ See below
	Flashing *Effect* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
	Canceling ✉ ➡ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *Effect* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink Off* ➡ ●
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window, ⌫ (Long) ➡ *Effect* ➡ ● ➡ *Alignment* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Enter text

Receiving/Opening Messages

■ Receiving

Opening new mail out of Standby	✉ (Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	✉ ➡ ✉ • When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ●. • Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● • When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), select a line and press ● to proceed.

Retrieving remaining portions	**Via Mail Notice** In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ● ➡ ✆
	Via Server Mail List ✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● • When retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Retrieving all Server Mail	**Start Here** ✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Directly from Server *Retrieve All* ➡ ●
	Via Server Mail List *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Retrieve All* ➡ ● • When retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

■ Opening

Viewing new messages on External Display	▭ ➡ ▭ • Available with handset closed.

4

Messaging

4-21

■ **Message Window**

Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** In message window, select number ▶ ● ▶ *Call* or *Video Call* ▶ ● **Sending Messages** In message window, select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Create Message* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ ⌧ ● For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step. **Accessing Internet Sites** In message window, select URL ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ● Select *PC Site Br.* to connect via PC Site Browser.
Saving attachments to Data Folder	In message window, select file ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Save to Data Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ● For templates, *Save as Template* appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Using attachments	[Start Here] In message window, select file ▶ ⊠ ▶ See below **As Wallpaper** *Set as Wallpaper* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ▶ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●. **As Ringtone/Ringvideo** *Set as Ringtone* or *Set as Ring Video* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ▶ Select item ▶ ● ● For *For New Message* or *For New PC Mail*, enter ring time and press ●.

Playing slides	In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Slide Play* ▶ ● ● A slide consists of message text with attachments.
Saving to Phone Book	**Saving Sender Address** In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Save Address* ▶ ● ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ ⌧ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*. **Saving Linked Info** In message window, select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Save to Phone Book* or *Save Address* ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ ⌧ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Copying text	[Start Here] In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Copy* ▶ ● ▶ See below **Sender/Recipient Number/Address** *Address* ▶ ● ▶ Select number/address ▶ ● **Subject or Message Text** *Subject* or *Message Text* ▶ ● ▶ Select first character ▶ ● ▶ Highlight text range ▶ ●
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Copy & Search Dict.* ▶ ● ▶ Select first character ▶ ● ▶ Highlight text range ▶ ● ▶ Select dictionary ▶ ● ▶ *Search* ▶ ● ▶ Select word ▶ ●
Jumping to message top/bottom	In message window, ⊠ ▶ *View Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Scroll Jump* ▶ ● ▶ *Jump to Top* or *Jump to Bottom* ▶ ●
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Report Spam* ▶ ● ▶ ⌧ ● Signature is not inserted automatically. ● Not available for PC Mail.

4

Messaging

4-22

■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window, ✉ ➡ *Reply* ➡ ● ➡ Select type/option ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✉
Opening received message for reference	In message window, ✉ ➡ *Rep. with View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✉
Replying quickly using fixed text	**Editing Quick Reply Text** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Quick Reply* ➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● **Using Quick Reply** In message window, ✉ (Long) ➡ Select text ➡ ●
Replying to messages automatically	Start Here ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Saving Recipients** *Address Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter recipient ➡ Select mode ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ ✉ ➡ ✉ ● Select saved recipient and press ● to edit number/address. **Editing Reply Text** *Reply Message* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ● Edit text for each mode. **Activating Auto Reply** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Replies are sent via S! Mail. ● Replies are sent to the same sender only once each time Auto Reply is activated. ● Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad.

Managing Messages

■ Message List

Selecting multiple messages	**Selecting** In message list, select message ➡ ✉ ● To uncheck, press ✉ again. **Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once** In message list, ✉ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Check in Block* ➡ ● **Unchecking All** In message list, ✉ ➡ *Unselect All* ➡ ●
Color-tagging messages	In message list, ✉ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Color Label* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
Sorting messages	In message list, ✉ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening sender/recipient details	In message list, select message ➡ ✉ ➡ *View Mail Address* ➡ ● ➡ Select sender or recipient ➡ ●
Checking memory status	✉ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	In message list, select message ➡ ✉ ➡ *Message Details* ➡ ●
Changing template name display	✉ ➡ *Templates* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Item Displayed* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●

4

Messaging

4-23

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	**In message list, select SMS message** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *SIM Sync* ➡ ⬤ ● Available for compatible USIM Cards.
Changing received message status (read/unread)	**In message list, select message** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Switch to Unread* or *Switch to Read* ➡ ⬤

■ **Deleting Messages**

Deleting messages	**One Message** **In message list, select message** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ● Alternatively, delete an open message.
	All Messages **In message list,** ☑ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Except Locked Msg.* or *Delete All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤
	All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages **In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages),** ☑ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	**In message list, select Mail Notice** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select option** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤

Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	**Start Here** ☑ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **See below** **One Message** **Select message** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ **All Messages** ☑ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ● When retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⬤.
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	☑ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Except New Msg.* or *Delete All* ➡ ⬤

■ **Folders**

Moving messages manually	**In message list, select message** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Move to Folder* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ⬤ ● When sort messages confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⬤; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
Renaming folders	**In folder list, select folder** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ⬤ ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Deleting folders	**In folder list, select folder** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤ ● When delete message confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⬤. ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Adding folders	**In folder list,** ☑ ➡ *Create New Folder* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ⬤ ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.

4

Messaging

Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	**In folder list, select folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *Retrieve New* ▶ ●**
Canceling Secret	**Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *Unset Secret* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ●**
Searching messages within specified folder	**In folder list, select folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *Search* ▶ ● ▶ *Search Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address/subject/text string ▶ ●**

■ **Sorting into Folders**

Re-sorting messages	**In folder list, select folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *Classify* ▶ ●** ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	**☑ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Anti Spam Measures* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Individual(Common)* ▶ ● (☑) ▶ ☑ ▶ Select blank entry ▶ ● ▶ Select key ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address/subject ▶ ● ▶ ☒ ▶ ☒ ▶ ●**
Editing/deleting sort keys	**[Start Here] In folder list, select folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *My Folders* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ See below** **Editing Sender/Recipient Key** **☑ ▶ *Replace* ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ● ▶ ☒** **Editing Subject Key** **● ▶ Edit ▶ ● ▶ ☒** **Deleting an Entry** **☑ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ☒** **Deleting All Entries** **☑ ▶ *Clear All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ☒**

■ **Chat Folders**

Deleting folders	**☑ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ☑ ▶ *Delete Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ●** ● When delete message confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●. ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Deleting all messages	**☑ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ● ▶ ☑ ▶ *Manage Msg.* ▶ ● ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●**
Resetting Chat Folders	**☑ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ ☑ ▶ *Reset* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●**

4

Messaging

4-25

■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Mail Group* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	**Start Here** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Mail Group* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ See below
	Mail Groups ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
	Group Members ● ➡ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ *Remove Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ✆
	● Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.
Changing Mail Group members	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Mail Group* ➡ ● ➡ Select Group ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ *Re-assign Entry* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select katakana row ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ✆

Using Messages

Forwarding messages	In message window, ✉ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ✆ ● Attached files are forwarded. ● To forward SMS messages, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.
Sending from Drafts	✉ ➡ *Drafts* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✆
Sending unsent messages	**Start Here** In message list (Unsent Messages), select message ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Sending without Editing *Resend* ➡ ●
	Edit & Send *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✆
Using sent messages	In message list (Sent Messages), select message ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit & Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ✆
Saving messages with schedules to Calendar	In message list, select message ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Save to Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ● ➡ Enter start/end date/time ➡ ● ➡ ✆

Forwarding Server Mail	**Via Mail Notice** **In message list, select Mail Notice** ▶ ✉ ▶ *Forward* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Notifi. Forward* **(forward Mail Notice text only)** or *Remote Forward* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select recipient field** ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select method** ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select/enter number/address** ▶ ⬤ ▶ ⬙
	Via Server Mail List ✉ ▶ *Server Mail Box* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Mail List* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select message** ▶ ✉ ▶ *Remote Forward* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Enter recipient** ▶ ⬙ ● When retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⬤.
Opening Server Mail properties	✉ ▶ *Server Mail Box* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Mail List* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select message** ▶ ✉ ▶ *Message Details* ▶ ⬤ ● When retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⬤.
Checking Server Mail message count and volume	✉ ▶ *Server Mail Box* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Mailbox Volume* ▶ ⬤

General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Scroll Unit* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select unit** ▶ ⬤
Changing message list view	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Message List View* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select option** ▶ ⬤
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Address View* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Show All* ▶ ⬤
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Received Msg. View* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select option** ▶ ⬤ ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Sent Msg. View* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select option** ▶ ⬤ ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Auto Delete* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Received Msg.* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Select option** ▶ ⬤
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Auto Delete* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Sent Messages* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Not Auto Del* ▶ ⬤
Changing spam report recipient	✉ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Report Spam* ▶ ⬤ ▶ **Edit address** ▶ ⬤ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ⬤

4

Messaging

4-27

General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Resend* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Designating/ editing reply-to address	Start Here ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply to Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Designating *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select/ enter address ➡ ●
	Editing *Edit Address* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Selecting quote option	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply With Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Sending Status* ➡ ● ➡ *Off(Background)* ➡ ●

General Settings (Receive)

■ Message Notice & Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *Secret Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *No Response* ➡ ●
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	Start Here ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Notice* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Showing New Message Window *On Active Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Selecting Scrolling Notice Option *View Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
	Muting Alert Sound *Alert Sound* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling Animation View	✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Animation View* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ **Feeling Mail**

Hiding graphics above Information window	B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *Link to Feeling* → ● → *Idle Screen Info.* → ● → *Off* → ●
Disabling/ changing illumination	Start Here B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *Link to Feeling* → ● → *Light* → ● → See below
	Disabling *Switch On/Off* → ● → *Off* → ●
	Changing Color *Light Color* → ● → Select category → ● → Select color → ●
Changing vibration pattern	B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *Link to Feeling* → ● → *Vibration Pattern* → ● → Select pattern → ●
Muting/changing ringtones	Start Here B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *Link to Feeling* → ● → *Ringtone* → ● → See below
	Muting Ringer *Switch On/Off* → ● → *Off* → ●
	Changing Ringtones *Assign Tone* → ● → Select category → ● → Select folder → ● → Select tone/file → ●

■ **3D Pictogram**

Disabling 3D Pictogram	B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *3D Pictogram* → ● → *Display Effect* → ● → *Disable* → ●
Changing background/speed	Start Here B → *Settings* → ● → *General Settings* → ● → *Receive* → ● → *3D Pictogram* → ● → See below
	Changing Background *Background Color* → ● → Select color or *Random* → ●
	Changing Animation Speed *Display Speed* → ● → Select speed → ●

S! Mail Settings

■ **Automatic Retrieval**

Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan	B → *Settings* → ● → *S! Mail Settings* → ● → *Message DL(Japan)* → ● → *Manual* → ●
Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad	B → *Settings* → ● → *S! Mail Settings* → ● → *Message DL(Abroad)* → ● → *Manual* → ● ● When set to *Auto (All)*, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; may incur high charges.

4

Messaging

Retrieving specified messages	Start Here ✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Message DL(Japan)* or *Message DL(Abroad)* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Auto (Specify)* ➔ ✉ ➔ See below

Selecting Sender Types
Select item ➔ ⦿ (☐/☑) ➔ ✆

Specifying Numbers/Addresses
Individual Address ➔ ✉ ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ⦿ ➔ ✆

Deleting an Individual Address Entry
Individual Address ➔ ✉ ➔ Select entry ➔ ✉ ➔ *Delete* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Yes* ➔ ⦿ ➔ ✆

Deleting All Individual Address Entries
Individual Address ➔ ✉ ➔ Select entry ➔ ✉ ➔ *Clear All* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Yes* ➔ ⦿ ➔ ✆

■ **Attachments**

Disabling image auto-resize	✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Picture Appearance* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Normal* ➔ ⦿ ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Auto Play File* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Pictures* or *Sounds* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *On* or *Off* ➔ ⦿ ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Send File Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Attach Only* ➔ ⦿ ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.

PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *PC Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *PC Mail DL* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *PC Mail DL* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *All Contents* ➔ ⦿
Retrieving new messages automatically	Start Here ✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *PC Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Check New Mail* ➔ ⦿ ➔ See below

Enabling Automatic Retrieval
Check New Mail ➔ ⦿ ➔ *On* ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select account ➔ ⦿ (☑ appears) ➔ ✆ ➔ ⦿
● Setting Check New Mail to *On* may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
● Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.

Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval
Interval ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select interval ➔ ⦿

Disabling automatic word wrap	✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *PC Mail Settings* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Word wrap* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Off* ➔ ⦿

4

Messaging

Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	[Start Here] ☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ☒ ➡ **See below** **Selecting Sender Types** Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ ☒ **Specifying Addresses** *Individual Address* ➡ ☒ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ● ➡ ☒ **Deleting an Individual Address Entry** *Individual Address* ➡ ☒ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☒ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☒ **Deleting All Individual Address Entries** *Individual Address* ➡ ☒ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☒ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☒
Restricting complete message retrieval by size	☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *Max DL Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select account ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Effective when PC Mail DL is set to *All Contents* or *DL All From List*.
Enabling automatic PC Mail retrieval abroad	☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Check New Mail* ➡ ● ➡ *Abroad* ➡ ● ➡ *Enable* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges.
Disabling automatic retrieval during specified time	☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Check New Mail* ➡ ● ➡ *Inactivate Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ *Start Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter start time ➡ ● ➡ *End Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter end time ➡ ●

SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit	☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Expiry Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing SMS Server number	[Start Here] ☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Center* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Editing** *Setting1(Default)* to *Setting3* ➡ ● ➡ Edit number ➡ ● **Deleting** *Setting2* or *Setting3* ➡ ☒ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Activating** *Setting2* or *Setting3* ➡ ☒ ➡ *Set Default* ➡ ● ● Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so. ● Activated number moves to *Setting1(Default)* and shifts the others down.
Changing character encoding for composing messages	☒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ Select encoding ➡ ●

Sending Messages

❓ Cannot enter message text or attach files

- Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

❓ *Sending failure* appears in Information window

- To resend, follow these steps:
  Sending failure ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉

❓ Unsent message is not resent automatically

- Auto Resend attempts to send unsent messages automatically up to two times only.

❓ Set Auto Play File cannot be set

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

❓ Msg. Settings are not applied

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

❓ Cannot set Msg. Settings

- These settings cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message: Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.
- Only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available for SMS.

❓ Signature is not inserted automatically

- Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

❓ Cannot cancel sent messages

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

❓ Cannot send PC Mail

- Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
  ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Account* ➡ ● ➡ *Select account* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ *Sender Auth.* ➡ ● ➡ *SMTP Auth.* ➡ ✉ ➡ *User Name* or *Password* ➡ ●
- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.

Incoming Messages

❓ **Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages**

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.

❓ **A confirmation requesting a reply appears**

- To reply, choose *Yes* and press ●. Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

❓ **Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings**

- Ringtone, Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

❓ **Message text appears distorted**

- Follow these steps to change encoding: **In message window,** ✉/ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ●

Handling Messages

❓ **Cannot move messages into some folders**

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

❓ **Cannot receive messages**

- If ✉ appears, memory is full; delete messages (**P.4-24**).
- If out appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

❓ **S! Mail is not delivered as sent**

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

❓ **Still images are not delivered as sent**

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

❓ **Video files are not delivered as sent**

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

4

Messaging

4-33

5

**Yahoo! Keitai &
PC Site Browser**

5-1

Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.
- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**).

Transmission/Information Fees
Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security
Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Secure Pages
- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

○Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ○Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication ○Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on **P.5-14** - **5-15**)

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Main Menu

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 <kbd>Y</kbd> ➡ **Connection starts**

Cursor
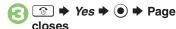
Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press <kbd>Y</kbd>.

2 **Highlight menu item** ➡ ●
- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat **2** to open additional links.

3 <kbd>☎</kbd> ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages
[Internet Page] <kbd>Y</kbd> ➡ **Previous page opens**
■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ●
Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ●
User Authentication
Enter user ID or password ➡ ● ➡ <kbd>Y</kbd>
Streaming
- Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Using History

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ●

History

2 **Select record** ➡ ● ➡ **Connection starts**
- Corresponding page opens.

3 <kbd>☎</kbd> ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ ●

Enter URL
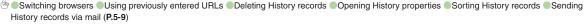
2 **Enter URL** ➡ ● ➡ **Connection starts**
- Corresponding page opens.

3 <kbd>☎</kbd> ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Advanced

✎ ●Switching browsers ●Using previously entered URLs ●Deleting History records ●Opening History properties ●Sorting History records ●Sending History records via mail (**P.5-9**)
●Playing media streams (And more on **P.5-11**)
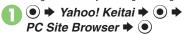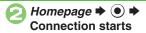
Using PC Site Browser

Open PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

1 ● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *PC Site Browser* ➜ ●

```
Yil@ .+.         07/07/07 1505
      PC Site Browser
∧ Homepage
▣ Bookmarks
▣ Saved Pages
▣ Enter URL
▣ History
▣ RSS Feed
▼ Yahoo! Keitai
▣ PC Site Browser…
```

2 *Homepage* ➜ ● ➜ **Connection starts**
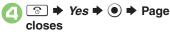
```
Yil@ .+.         07/07/07 1505
[  Internet Page graphic  ]
                              Pointer
```
Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press 🔄.

3 **Highlight menu item ➜ ●**

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 3 to open additional links.

4 🔚 ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages
   [Internet Page] 🔄 ➜ **Previous page opens**
   ■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
   [Internet Page] ✉ ➜ *Forward* ➜ ●
Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home
   [Internet Page] ✉ ➜ *Homepage* ➜ ●
User Authentication
   Enter user ID or password ➜ ● ➜ 🔄
Using History
   In 2, *History* ➜ ● ➜ Select record ➜ ●
Entering URLs Directly
   In 2, *Enter URL* ➜ ● ➜ Enter URL ➜ ●
Hiding Softkeys
   [Internet Page] ✉ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Softkey Area* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
Browsing in Wideview
   [Internet Page] Rotate handset 90 degrees counterclockwise

Advanced

👆 ●Switching browsers ●Using previously entered URLs ●Deleting History records ●Opening History properties ●Sorting History records ●Sending History records via mail (**P.5-9**)
   ●Showing navigation map for continuous scroll ●Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser) ●Hiding PC Site Browser messages (**P.5-14**)

Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, use 🎯 to scroll pages.
Long Press 🎯 to scroll continuously.

Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press 🖳 to select other frames.
When pointer navigation is active, point to a frame and press ⬤ to select it.

> **Viewing Single Frame**
> Select frame ➡ ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Frame In* ➡ ⬤
> ■ To return, press 🔳.

Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

■ **Opening a New Tab**

1 **On a page, select menu item ➡ ✉ ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ⬤**

2 ***Open in New Tab* ➡ ⬤**

Tab

■ **Switching Tabs**

1 **🖳 (Long) ➡ 🎯 Select tab ➡ ⬤**

● When pointer navigation is active, point to a tab and press ⬤ to open it.

> **Closing Tabs**
> 🖳 (Long) ➡ 🎯 Select tab ➡ ⬤ ➡
> ✉ ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Close Tab*
> or *Close All Other Tabs* ➡ ⬤

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Advanced

🔧 ●Using Web Search ●Searching current page ●Looking up copied words in dictionaries ●Saving files to Data Folder ●Jumping to page top/bottom
●Changing character size ●Zooming specific areas (And more on **P.5-9** - **5-10**)
●Changing scroll unit ●Disabling automatic image display/sound playback (And more on **P.5-14**)

Selecting Text

Activate pointer navigation and Long Press ● to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries.
Follow these steps to use a dictionary:

1 **On a page, select first character ➡ ● (Long)**
 ● Drag Mode is activated.

2 **Highlight text range ➡ ●**

3 辞書 ② **➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●**
 ● Dictionary opens with text inserted.

4 *Search* **➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ●**

Text Entry

1 **On a page, select text entry field ➡ ●**

2 **Enter text ➡ ●**
 ● Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)
[Internet page] Select text entry field ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Input Memory* ➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ ●

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 **On a page, select menu list field ➡ ●**

2 **Select item ➡ ●**

When Multiple Selection is Supported
● Select items as needed and press ⌫.
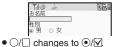
Page Item Indicators

Selection Items

Buttons ○ or boxes □ appear.

1 **On a page, select button or box ➡ ●**

 ● ○/□ changes to ◉/☑.

Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 **On a page, select command ➡ ●**
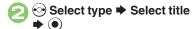
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

1. On a page, ☒ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
   - *Save* appears only for savable pages.

2. Enter/edit title ➡ ●

Opening Bookmarks

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ●

2. ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Opening Bookmarks Online
[Internet Page] ☒ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ *Open List* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ●

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

1. On a page, ☒ ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
   - *Save* appears only for savable pages.

2. Enter/edit title ➡ ●

Opening Saved Pages

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ●
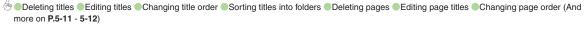
2. Select page ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Opening Saved Pages Online
[Internet Page] ☒ ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Open List* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ●

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Advanced

5-7

Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites. Transmission fees apply.

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Available for PC Site Browser only.

Via RSS-Compatible Sites
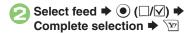
🔊 appears for RSS-compatible sites.

📶📶 ⊿   🖳🔊 ̄15:05 ̄ ┈ RSS Indicator

1 On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Register In RSS Feed* ➡ ●

2 Select feed ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ﾖ

3 *Save* ➡ ●
 ● Choose *Yes* to update immediately or *No* and press ●.

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS/RDF/XML icons on RSS-compatible sites.

1 On a page, select icon ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ●

Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ●

2 *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ●

📶📶 ⊿   15:05
RSS Feed
🔊 Reload All
🔢 今日のニュース
🔢 ○○の日記

RSS Feed List

3 *Reload All* ➡ ● ➡ ●

4 *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

5 Select feed ➡ ●

📶📶 ⊿   15:05
Items
今日のニュース
明日の天気
🔢 今日のエンタメ情報

Title List

6 Select title ➡ ●
 ● Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds
 [RSS Feed List] Select feed ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Reload* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
Disabling/Enabling Updates
 [RSS Feed List] Select feed ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Update* or *Accept Update* ➡ ●
Accessing Source Sites
 [Title List] Select title ➡ ● ➡ Select linked title ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

Connecting/Browsing

■ General

Switching browsers	On a page, ✉ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Change to PC Browser* or *Switch Browser* ➜ ● ➜ *This Page* or *Linked Page* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ ●
Using previously entered URLs	Start Here ● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ See below **Yahoo! Keitai** *Enter URL* ➜ ● ➜ ✉ ➜ *URL Entry Log* ➜ ● ➜ Select URL ➜ ● ➜ ● **PC Site Browser** *PC Site Browser* ➜ ● ➜ *Enter URL* ➜ ● ➜ ✉ ➜ *URL Entry Log* ➜ ● ➜ Select URL ➜ ● ➜ ●

■ History

Deleting History records	Start Here ● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *History* ➜ ● ➜ ☺ Select type ➜ See below **One Record** Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● **All Records** ✉ ➜ *Delete All* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Opening History properties	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *History* ➜ ● ➜ Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ *Details* ➜ ●
Sorting History records	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *History* ➜ ● ➜ ✉ ➜ *Sort* ➜ ● ➜ *By Domain* or *By Date* ➜ ●

Sending History records via mail	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *History* ➜ ● ➜ Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ *Send URL* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ✉ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Page Operations

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Using Web Search	On a page, ✉ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Web Search* ➜ ● ➜ Enter search text ➜ ●
Searching current page	On a page, ✉ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Search* ➜ ● ➜ Enter search text ➜ ● ● Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ✉ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Copy & Search Dict.* ➜ ● ➜ Select first character ➜ ● ➜ Highlight text range ➜ ● ➜ Select dictionary ➜ ● ➜ *Search* ➜ ●
Saving files to Data Folder	Start Here On a page, ✉ ➜ *Save Items* ➜ ● ➜ See below **Files on Page** Select file ➜ ● ➜ *Save* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ● ● Some files are saved automatically. ● End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand. ● Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand. **Background Images** *Save Background Image* ➜ ● ➜ *Save* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ●

Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** On a page, highlight number ➜ ● ➜ *Call* or *Video Call* ➜ ●
	Sending Messages On a page, highlight number or mail address ➜ ● ➜ *Create Message* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⊠
Copying text	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Copy Text* ➜ ● ➜ Select first character ➜ ● ➜ Highlight text range ➜ ●
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Send URL* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⊠ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Jump In Page* ➜ ● ➜ *Page Top* or *Page Bottom* ➜ ●
Opening function shortcuts	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Help* ➜ ●
Opening page properties	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Details* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ●
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Char-code* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●

Handling Flash® files	<u>Start Here</u> On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Flash®Menu* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Pausing/Playing *Pause*, *Resume* or *Replay* ➜ ●
	Setting Image Quality *Quality* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Updating page content	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *Reload* ➜ ● ● To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.

■ **Yahoo! Keitai**

Changing character size	On a page, ◀ (enlarge) or ▶ (reduce)

■ **PC Site Browser**

Switching view	On a page, ⊠ ➜ *PC Screen* or *Small Screen* ➜ ● ● In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, ◀ (enlarge) or ▶ (reduce)
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, ⁵ (Long) ➜ Quick Movement map appears ➜ Select location ➜ ●
Zooming specific areas	On a page, point to area ➜ ⁷ (Long) ● Pointed area is enlarged and shown in the lower half of Display. Long Press ⁷ to toggle Zoom Area options (Small, Large and Off).

Streaming

Playing media streams	**On a page, select file ▶ ●** ● Downloaded content cannot be saved.
Customizing streaming settings	**[Start Here] While streaming, ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below** **Changing Playback Size** ***Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●** **Setting Backlight Status** ***Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●** **Adjusting Sound Effects** ***Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●** ● Playback size may not change depending on file/stream. ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight setting.
Streaming from Media Player	**[Start Here] ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Streaming* ➡ ● ➡ See below** **Resuming from Stopped Point** ***Last Played* ➡ ●** **Using Bookmarks** ***Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ●** **Using History** ***History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●** ● Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused. ● Streaming sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of 🔊 Sound Output setting.

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

■ Bookmarks

Deleting titles	**[Start Here] ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ See below** **One Title** **Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●** **All Titles** **✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●**
Editing titles	**● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Title:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter title ➡ ● ➡ ꒰Y꒱**
Editing bookmarked URLs	**● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *URL:* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ ꒰Y꒱**
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	**● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ꒰Y꒱** ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Changing title order	**● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●**
Opening title properties	**● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●**
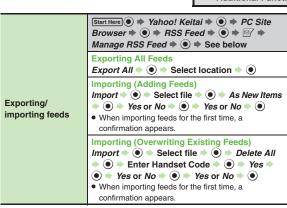
Sorting titles into folders	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select type ➡ See below
	Creating Folders ✉ ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Moving to Folders Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Moving from Folders Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ ●
	Renaming Folders Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Folders Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Saved Pages**

Deleting pages	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Page Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Pages ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing page titles	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter title ➡ ●
Changing page order	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Opening page properties	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Switching page list view	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *List View* or *Preview View* ➡ ●

RSS Feeds

Deleting feeds

Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below

One Entry
Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

All Entries
✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Sorting feeds

● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

Opening feed properties

● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Sorting feeds into folders

Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below

Creating Folders
✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Moving to Folders
Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●

Renaming Folders
Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Deleting Folders
Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Exporting/importing feeds

Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below

Exporting All Feeds
Export All ➡ ● ➡ Select location ➡ ●

Importing (Adding Feeds)
Import ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
● When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears.

Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)
Import ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
● When importing feeds for the first time, a confirmation appears.

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

5-13

Settings

Unless noted otherwise, settings are available for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser. (Operations described for Yahoo! Keitai.)

■ Internet Page

Changing scroll unit	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●
Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Downloads* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Image Display** *Images* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Show* ➡ ● **Sound Playback** *Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Play* ➡ ●
Changing character size	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Using pointer navigation	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Cursor Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Activating** *Cursor Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Normal Mode* ➡ ● **Changing Pointer Speed** *Speed Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ●
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Download to* ➡ ● ➡ *Prefer Card* ➡ ● ● Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.

■ PC Site Browser

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Page Navigation* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser)	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Warning Message* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* or *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ Memory Operation

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Op.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cache* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Clearing cookies	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Op.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Clearing authentication information	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Op.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Auth Info* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting all RSS feeds	● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Op.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete RSS Feed List* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Available for PC Site Browser.

■ Security Settings

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Manufacture Number* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Send Referer* ➜ ● ➜ *Not Send* ➜ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Cookies* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Script Settings* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Secure Prompt* ➜ ● ➜ *Do not Show* ➜ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Root Certificates* ➜ ● ➜ Select certificate ➜ ●
Changing validity of entered user ID/ password	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Keep Auth Info* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ● *Per Browsing* retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. *On* retains such authentication information even after turning handset off. ● Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Security Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Restrict Ajax* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●

■ Resetting

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Initialized Browser* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Restoring default handset settings	● ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ● ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Reset Settings* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Connecting/Browsing

What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.

Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- When switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (🖵 appears), additional function activation may be disabled; close either browser and retry.

6

Digital TV
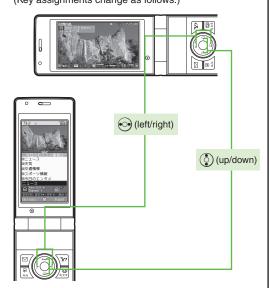
Basics

930SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Landscape Position

Enjoy widescreen TV images in landscape position.

- Use 🔘 according to TV orientation.
  (Key assignments change as follows.)

(left/right)

(up/down)

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

Access TV Listing (EPG)

Access TV Listing (EPG) to find program channels and times; set Reservations by date and time to record shows or activate TV.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing on handset; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

6

Digital TV
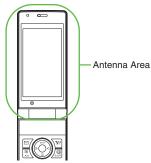
Precautions

- 930SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/ reception is unstable

Digital TV Antenna

TV Antenna is located behind Display. Move handset to find best reception.

Antenna Area

Use optional TV Antenna Connection Cable as needed.

Area Setup

Follow these steps when activating TV for the first time. Set up channels by area.

1 ⌨

> Channels unset.
> Set now?
>
> Yes
> No

● Setup confirmation appears.

2 *Yes* ➜ ●

> Select Region
> **Hokkaido/Tohoku**
> Hokuriku/Koshin'e…
> Kanto
> Tokai
> Kansai
> Chugoku
> Shikoku
> Kyushu/Okinawa
> Other Region

3 Select region ➜ ●

4 Select prefecture ➜ ● ➜ Select locality ➜ ●

> Tokyo
> Tokyo 23 Wards
> set.

● After setup, channel list appears.

5 ●

> Saved Tokyo 23
> Wards in Area 1.

● To watch TV, select *Digital TV* and press ●.

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup
In **3**, ◌ *Other Region* ➜ ●
Adding Reception Areas
⌨ ➜ ✉ ➜ *Set Channels* ➜ ● ➜
Change Area ➜ ● ➜ Select Area ➜
✉ ➜ *Set Area Info* ➜ ● ➜ From **3**

Advanced

✎ ●Switching reception Areas ●Renaming Areas ●Changing/disabling ◌ function ●Editing channels ●Deleting all channels in Area ●Adding new channels to Area ●Updating all channels in the Area (**P.6-11**)

Watching TV
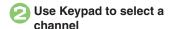
Complete Area setup first.
Use ⊙ according to TV orientation.

1 🖥

TV Window

● TV orientation changes with Display orientation.
● In portrait position, Data Broadcast text appears.

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

● Use ⊙ to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ TV ends

Incoming Calls

● Press ☎ to answer calls.
● When S! Circle Talk request arrives, press 🔲 to start S! Circle Talk.

When Memory Card is Inserted

● If an incoming Voice Call interrupts a program, it is temporarily recorded to Memory Card for Time Shift playback. To temporarily record programs manually, press 🖥 (Long) in TV window.

Incoming Messages
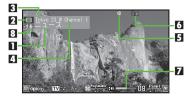
● Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press ✉ to open messages.

Key Assignments

Open Options Menu	✉
Toggle Panel On/Off	🔳
Activate TV/Change Area	🖥
Volume Control	◀▶

Panel Description

1	Program name	5	Sound Language
2	Channel key	6	Signal strength*
3	Area name	7	Volume
4	Station name	8	Channel

*The more bars the better.
Indicator position varies with display content, etc.

Advanced

✎ ●Viewing key assignments ●Searching current program on the Internet ●Enlarging display size for portrait position ●Smoothing TV images ●Saving current channel ●Selecting an audiovisual mode (**P.6-11**)
●Adjusting current AV Mode parameters ●Changing panel pattern ●Customizing viewing options for landscape position (And more on **P.6-12**)

6

Digital TV

6-5

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

Use ⟨◌⟩ to select an item and press ⏺ to access program-related information and interactive services.

TV Image

Data Broadcast

Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, ⟨⟩ (Long)
- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Program Info

1 In TV window, ⟨⟩ ➡ *OperateProgram* ➡ ⏺

2 *Program Info.* ➡ ⏺

Program Info Window

3 Select program ➡ ⏺
- To return, press ⟨BACK⟩ twice.
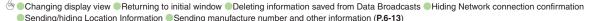
Setting Recording Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➡ ⟨⟩
- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Advanced
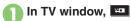
🔊 ●Changing display view ●Returning to initial window ●Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts ●Hiding Network connection confirmation
●Sending/hiding Location Information ●Sending manufacture number and other information (**P.6-13**)
●Setting TV Timer via Program Info (**P.6-16**)

6

Digital TV

6-6

Capturing Screenshots

Capture screenshots while watching TV.
(May be unavailable if TV was activated
by TV Timer.)
Saved images cannot be forwarded,
edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to
messages.

❶ **In TV window,** 📺

❷ ●
  ● Image is saved.

 Opening Saved Images

❶ ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ●

❷ *TV-Image Folder* ➡ ●

❸ **Select image ➡** ●

 Opening Images while Watching TV
 [TV Window] ✉ ➡ *Capture* ➡ ● ➡
 TV-Image Folder ➡ ●

Enlarging Specific Image Portion

Available in landscape position.

❶ **In TV window,** 1 **-** 9
  ● Long Press Key Assignments:

3	6	9
Upper left	**Upper center**	**Upper right**
2 **Left**	5 **Center**	8 **Right**
1	4	7
Lower left	**Lower center**	**Lower right**

Multi Job

❶ **In TV window,** 🔦

❷ **Select function ➡** ●
  ● To toggle function windows, press 📖.

❸ 📞 **➡ Function window
closes**

Recording/Playing Programs

Record clips on handset or Memory Card while watching TV.

Dubbing 10
- 930SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recorded programs to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.
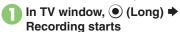
Precautions
- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 930SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

Recording Programs

When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Light illuminates green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

1 In TV window, ● (Long) ➜ **Recording starts**

Recording Window
- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.

2 ● (Long) ➜ **Recording ends**
- Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

Recording Programs in Portrait Position [TV Window] ▭ **(Long)**
Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted
- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Saving Files via the Internet while Recording
- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

Chasing Playback

Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.

1 ▨ **(Long)**
- Recording window returns when playback has caught up to the real-time program.
- See the table on **P.6-9** for playback operations (Split File and Set Marker are not available).

2 ▧ **(Long)** ➜ **Playback stops**

Advanced

🖑 ●Recording programs without Data Broadcasts ●Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card ●Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation ●Recording programs to handset (**P.6-14**)

6 Digital TV

Playing Recorded Programs

1. ⦿ ➔ *TV* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *TV Player* ➔ ⦿
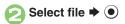
   ```
   Video List          ▣
   ■ ニュース
      XX/XX 19:00 Channel 1
   ■ ドラマ
      XX/XX 21:00 Channel 2
   ```
   Video List

   - Handset Video List appears. (Memory Card Video List appears if a card is inserted.)
   - 📵 indicates the file is unplayable.

2. Select file ➔ ⦿

   ```
   Tokyo 23 W Channel 1         15:05
   ニュース
   [image]
   🗐/Options ▸0:00 0:00/0:2:00 Pause ◀● 08 Panel🖂
   ```
   Playback Window

   - Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

3. 🖂 (Long) ➔ Playback stops

   Changing Video List from Memory Card to Handset
   After 1, ☑ ➔ *Change to Phone* ➔ ⦿

   #### Playback Operations

   - Adjust volume or enlarge widescreen image portion in the same way as while watching TV.
   - Use 🕹 according to TV orientation.

Fast Forward	⊙
Rewind	⊙[1]
Skip Forward	⊡#🔒
Skip Backward	⊞✳🔒
Pause[2]	⦿ (🖂 in portrait position)
Split File	🔘 (Long)
Set Marker	🔘
Toggle Panel On/Off	🗐

   [1]Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)
   [2]In pause, use 🕹 to reverse/advance frame.

Time Shift Playback

Insert a Memory Card to temporarily record TV programs interrupted by incoming Voice Calls for Time Shift playback. (See related indicators in the screenshot below.)

```
☐ Tokyo 23 W Channel 1         15:05
16 ニュース
        ⦿ RECORDING
[image]
🗐/Options ▸      TV▸◀●      08 Panel🖂
```

Follow these steps to start playback:

1. 🔒 (Long) ➔ Playback starts
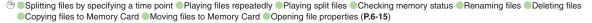
   - Playback stops when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.
   - To skip forward/backward or fast forward during Time Shift playback, see "Playback Operations" on the left.

2. 🔒 (Long) ➔ Recording/ playback stops

   - Recorded content is deleted.

   Stopping Fast Forward to Resume Playback
   🗐

Advanced

🔧 ●Splitting files by specifying a time point ●Playing files repeatedly ●Playing split files ●Checking memory status ●Renaming files ●Deleting files ●Copying files to Memory Card ●Moving files to Memory Card ●Opening file properties (**P.6-15**)

6
Digital TV

6-9

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

1 ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ●

2 *Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ ✉

3 *New Entry* ➡ ●

```
New Entry
From TV Listing
Manual                »
```

4 *Manual* ➡ ● ➡
Programming or *Recording*
➡ ●

```
XXXX / XX / XX
YYYY   MM   DD

15 : 05
HH    MM
```

5 Enter start date/time ➡ ●
➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●

6 *Channel:* ➡ ● ➡ Select
channel ➡ ● ➡ ⌨
● When a confirmation appears, read
and then press ●.

Setting Timer via EPG
In 4, *From TV Listing* ➡ ●
■ Refer to the application's help menu for
operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception; keep
handset open.
■ End current operations.
■ Confirm battery is adequately charged
and that there is enough free memory.
When TV is activated for Timer recording,
audio output is redirected to Speaker/
Headphones even if ⬛ Sound Output is
set to *Bluetooth Device*. (TV audio is
muted.)

When Memory Card is Not Inserted
● Clip is saved to handset.

At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after
the set duration.

```
Reservation time
for watching TV
will come soon.
```

Recording starts slightly before the Timer
start time and ends a few seconds after
the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function
● Confirmation appears if TV cannot
activate in current state; press ● then
end application to enable Timer.

Advanced

🔊 ●Opening/editing/deleting Timer details ●Opening/deleting Timer log ●Customizing TV Alarm settings ●Ending operations automatically at Timer time
(**P.6-16**)

Area & Channel

Switching reception Areas	While watching TV, ⌨ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⬤
Renaming Areas	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select Area ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Area Name* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⬤
Changing/disabling ⊙ function	[Start Here]While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Channel Key Setting* ➡ ⬤ ➡ See below
	Toggling All Receivable Channels *By Manual* ➡ ⬤
	Disabling *Disable* ➡ ⬤
Editing channels	[Start Here]While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *CH Switch* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select channel ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Moving Channels *Move* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select target key ➡ ⬤
	Deleting Channels *Delete* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select Area ➡ ✉ ➡ *Reset Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select Area ➡ ✉ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Update Further* ➡ ⬤
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select Area ➡ ✉ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Update All* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤

Watching

Viewing key assignments	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Help* ➡ ⬤ ● Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching current program on the Internet	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *OperateProgram* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Program Info. Search* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Search* ➡ ⬤ ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging display size for portrait position	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Screen Size* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Enlarge(Portrait)* ➡ ⬤
Smoothing TV images	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Smooth Mode* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *On* ➡ ⬤ ● May not be effective depending on the image.
Saving current channel	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Save Channel* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select key ➡ ⬤ ● To overwrite a saved channel, choose *Yes* and press ⬤.
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV, ✉ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *AV Mode* ➡ ⬤ ➡ Select mode ➡ ⬤ ● TV reception time may be relatively shorter when *High Resolution* is selected.

6

Digital TV

	Start Here While watching TV, ☑ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Brightness *Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Brightness* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
	Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor *Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Brightness* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ (□/☑) ➡ ●
	Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene *Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Control by Scene* ➡ ● ➡ *On(Light)* or *On* ➡ ●
Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	**Other Image-Related Parameters** *Image* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ● • Adjust *Contrast*, *Blackness* (black level), *Color* (color density), *Tint* (skin color tone) and *Sharpness*.
	Restoring Default Image Settings *Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Selecting Sound Option *Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing panel pattern	While watching TV, ☑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Panel Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
	Start Here ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Landscape Sets.* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Customizing viewing options for landscape position	**Showing Indicators Always** *Display Icon* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Disabling Partial Image Enlargement *Enlarge Point* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Using Portrait Position Key Assignments *Key Direction* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Switching One Seg service	While watching TV, ☑ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Select Serv. Station* ➡ ● ➡ Select service ➡ ● • Available for programs with multiple services.
	Start Here ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	**Showing Alarm Notice** *Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Notice* ➡ ●
	Showing Calls or S! Circle Talk Requests Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Notice a Call* ➡ ●
	Showing New Message Notice *Incoming Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ●
Listening to audio from Speaker	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ●
Using wireless Headphones	While watching TV, 🔅 (Long) • Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Exit* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Exit Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Exit* ➡ ● ➡ *Close Action* ➡ ● ➡ *Watch TV* ➡ ●

6

Digital TV

Data Broadcast (Portrait Position Only)

Changing display view	**While viewing Data Broadcast,** ✉ ➡ *Set Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Change View (Data)* ➡ ● ● To return to TV window, press ⦂.
Returning to initial window	**While viewing Data Broadcast,** ✉ ➡ *Set Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Back to Top* ➡ ●
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	[Start Here] ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete StationData* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Deleting by Station **Select station** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Deleting All ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Hiding Network connection confirmation	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Notify Connection* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Sending/hiding Location Information	[Start Here] ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Location* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Sending Always *On* ➡ ●
	Hiding Always *Off* ➡ ●
Sending manufacture number and other information	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Broadcast Data* ➡ ● ➡ *Manufacture Number* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	**While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source** ➡ ● ● Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	[Start Here] ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Link* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Opening TV Links **Select link** ➡ ● ● Connection fees may apply.
	Opening Properties **Select link** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Deleting TV links	[Start Here] ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Link* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Entry **Select link** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

6

Digital TV

6-13

Subtitle & Sound

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Changing subtitle settings</td><td>Start Here While watching TV, ⊠ ➜ Subtitle/Sound ➜ ⦿ ➜ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Showing Subtitles Always
Display Subtitle ➜ ⦿ ➜ On ➜ ⦿</td></tr>
<tr><td>Hiding Subtitles Always
Display Subtitle ➜ ⦿ ➜ Off ➜ ⦿</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changing Subtitle Language
Subtitle Language ➜ ⦿ ➜ Language 2 ➜ ⦿
● Available when multiple languages are supported.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Showing Subtitle Area Always
Auto Subtitle Off ➜ ⦿ ➜ Off ➜ ⦿
● Available in portrait position only.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Showing Subtitles at the Top
Subtitle Position ➜ ⦿ ➜ Upper ➜ ⦿
● Available in landscape position only.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Changing sound settings</td><td>Start Here While watching TV, ⊠ ➜ Subtitle/Sound ➜ ⦿ ➜ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td>Selecting Sound Option
Sound Type ➜ ⦿ ➜ Sound2 ➜ ⦿
● Available when multiple sounds are supported.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Listening to Sub Language
Sound Language ➜ ⦿ ➜ Sub ➜ ⦿</td></tr>
<tr><td>Listening to Main & Sub Languages
Sound Language ➜ ⦿ ➜ Main + Sub ➜ ⦿</td></tr>
</table>

Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	⦿ ➜ *TV* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Broadcast Data* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Set Recording* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Image Only* ➜ ⦿
Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card	⦿ ➜ *TV* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Broadcast Data* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Image Location* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Memory Card* ➜ ⦿
Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation	⦿ ➜ *TV* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Set Call Time Shift* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Off* ➜ ⦿
Recording programs to handset	⦿ ➜ *TV* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Save Recording to* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Phone Memory* ➜ ⦿

6

Digital TV

Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, ☑ ➡ *Split File* ➡ ● ➡ *Select Point* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Specify point ➡ ● ➡ *Confirm* ➡ ●
Playing files repeatedly	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Playback Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ *Repeat* ➡ ●
Playing split files	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ Select split file ➡ ☒ ➡ Select file ➡ ●

■ Managing

Checking memory status	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Memory Remaining* ➡ ●
Renaming files	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Deleting files	**Start Here** ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Single Files** Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Files** ☑ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Copying files to Memory Card	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change to Phone* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Copy to Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit.
Moving files to Memory Card	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change to Phone* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Move to Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Files once moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.
Opening file properties	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Markers

Playing files with Markers	**Start Here** During playback ➡ **See below** **Skipping between Markers** ⊙ (Long) or ⊙ (Long) **Moving to Specific Markers** ⁰ - ⁹
Using Marker List	**Start Here** During playback, ☑ ➡ *Set Maker* ➡ ● ➡ *Marker List* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Starting Playback** Select number ➡ ● **Deleting a Marker** Select number ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● **Deleting All Markers** ☑ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

6

Digital TV

TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Setting TV Timer via Program Info</td><td colspan="2">Start Here While watching TV ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">In Landscape Position
● ➡ Select program ➡ ✉ ➡ <i>Programming</i> ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">In Portrait Position
✉ ➡ <i>OperateProgram</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>Program Info.</i>
➡ ● ➡ Select program ➡ ✉ ➡ <i>Programming</i>
➡ ●</td></tr>
</table>

Opening/editing/deleting Timer details	**Start Here** ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Opening Entries Select entry ➡ ●
	Editing Entries Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ✉ ● Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.
	Deleting Entries Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening/deleting Timer log	**Start Here** ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Opening Timer Log Select record ➡ ●
	Playing Recorded Programs Select record ➡ ✉
	Deleting Records Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Customizing TV Alarm settings	**Start Here** ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing TV Alarm Time *Alarm Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
	Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light *Alarm*, *Vibration* or *Light* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Changing Duration *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Ending operations automatically at Timer time	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Reserve Prior* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Some operations may not end automatically.

Watching

? **TV won't activate**

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? **Cannot watch TV**

- Reception may be poor (**P.6-5**); change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information (**P.13-6**).
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

? **Area setup does not complete correctly**

- Perform *Update All* in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

? **Ringtone does not sound as set while recording**

- When a Chaku-Uta® file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

? **Could not start recording. appeared as recording result**

- Recording failed due to low battery/ memory, active function, etc.

? **Recording aborted. appeared as recording result**

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.

6

Digital TV

7

Camera & Imaging

Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images, or use long exposure.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Imaging Functions

Edit captured images or print on a compatible printer.

*May not be delivered as sent depending on image/recording size or recipient device.

Precautions
- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off
- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

Internal & External Cameras

Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless noted otherwise, operations in this chapter describe External Camera.
Sizes are limited and shooting modes are not available for Internal Camera.

Camera Key
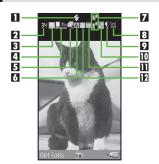
Press 🔲 in Standby to activate mobile camera. (Last used Viewfinder appears first.)
Press ⌨ to toggle Photo Viewfinder and Video Viewfinder.

Display Indicators
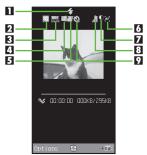
The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

Photo Viewfinder

🔳	Mobile Light	🔳	Focus
🔳	Memory	🔳	Exposure
🔳	Picture Quality	🔳	Background Save
🔳	Picture Size		Save to
🔳	Continuous Shoot	🔳	White Balance
🔳	Scene	🔳	ISO Sensitivity
	Long Exposure		Self-timer
🔳	Remote Shutter		

Video Viewfinder

🔳	Mobile Light	🔳	Record Time
🔳	Video Quality	🔳	Focus
🔳	Record Size	🔳	Exposure
🔳	Memory for still image capture	🔳	Save to
		🔳	Self-timer

7
Camera & Imaging

7-3

Capturing Still Images

1 ● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡
Photo Camera ➡ ●

Photo Viewfinder
● Frames appear on detected faces. (Face Auto Focus)
● Viewfinder orientation changes with Display orientation.

2 Frame image on Display ➡ ●

Image Save Window
● Shutter clicks and the captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press CLEAR/BACK.)

3 ●
● Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
● Open saved images via Data Folder.

4 📞 ➡ **Camera shuts down**

Face Detection
● Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail After 2, 📧 ➡ **Complete message** ➡ 📧
■ May not be delivered as sent depending on image size or recipient device.

Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out	🔼/🔽
Toggle Mode	📧
Adjust Image Brightness	◉/◉
Change Image Size	5
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	#/🔦
Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera	📷
Open Help	0

Advanced

📷 ●Viewing key assignments ●Activating Mobile Light ●Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on **P.7-14**)
●Adjusting camera's light sensitivity ●Correcting Face Auto Focus images ●Changing image size ●Changing mode according to lighting or subject
●Setting Center Auto Focus ●Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions (And more on **P.7-15** - **7-16**)

Recording Video

1 ● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡
Video Camera ➡ ●
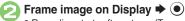
Video Viewfinder

● For pre-recording operations, see
P.7-4 "Pre-Image Capture Operations."

2 **Frame image on Display** ➡ ●
● Recording starts after a tone. (To
start over, press [BACK].)

3 ●

Video Save Menu

● Recording stops with a tone. (To
discard file and start over, press [BACK].)

4 *Save* ➡ ●
● Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns
for another shot.)
● Play saved video via Data Folder or
Media Player.

5 [☎] ➡ **Camera shuts down**

Pausing Recording
After **2**, [☒] (press repeatedly to
pause/resume)
■ May be unavailable depending on
recording size.
Playing Unsaved Video
In **4**, *Preview* ➡ ●
Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail
In **4**, *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Save and Send*
➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ [☒]
■ May not be delivered as sent depending
on recording size or recipient device.
Capturing Images while Recording
Video (Still Image Capture)
After **2**, [☒]
■ Captured images are saved when
saving recorded clip; open them via
Data Folder.
Incoming Calls
● If a call arrives before video is saved,
recorded clip is temporarily saved. End
the call to return.
When Battery Runs Low
● Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Advanced

👆 ●Viewing key assignments ●Activating Mobile Light ●Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on **P.7-14**)
●Switching to Internal Camera ●Changing recording time/size ●Enlarging Viewfinder size ●Recording video without sound (**P.7-16**)

Opening Saved Files

1 ● ➔ *Camera* ➔ ●

2 *Review* ➔ ●

Review Window

● Last saved mobile camera file opens/play. For still images, press ● to zoom in.

Pausing/Resuming Video
After ➋, ● (press repeatedly to pause/resume)
Reviewing Immediately After Saving
⌨ (Long)
Opening Help
[Review Window] ✉ ➔ *Help* ➔ ●

Accessing Older Files

1 In Review window, ⌨
● List appears; press ⌨ repeatedly to toggle lists.

2 Select file ➔ ●

Accessing Files from Viewfinder

1 In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➔ *Data Folder* ➔ ●

2 Select file ➔ ●
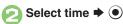
Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.

Self-timer

1 **In Photo/Video Viewfinder,**
   B ➧ *Self-timer* ➧ ●

2 **Select time** ➧ ●

3 **Frame image on Display** ➧ ●
   ● After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
   ● To stop recording, press ●.

Releasing Shutter during Countdown
   After 3**,** ●
Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown
   ● Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

1 **In Photo Viewfinder,** B ➧
   Modes ➧ ●

   Mode Menu

2 *Continuous Shoot* ➧ ●

3 **Select mode** ➧ ● ➧ **Select speed** ➧ ●

4 **Frame image on Display** ➧ ●
   ● After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
   ● When shooting speed is set to *Manual* (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat 4 for each frame.

5 ●

6 *All Pictures* ➧ ●
   ● All captured images are saved.

Saving the Selected Image
   After 4**,** e **(select image)** ➧ ● ➧
   Selected Picture ➧ ●

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

1 **In mode menu,** *Add Frame*
   ➧ ●

2 *Preset Frames* ➧ ● ➧
   Select frame ➧ ●

3 **Frame image on Display** ➧ ●
   ● Captured image appears.

Using Frames in Data Folder
   In 2**,** *Data Folder* ➧ ● ➧ **Select frame** ➧ ● ➧ ●

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

1 **In mode menu,** *Camera Effects* ➧ ●

2 **Select effect** ➧ ●

3 **Frame image on Display** ➧ ●
   ● Captured image appears.

7

Camera & Imaging

7-7

Long Exposure (Photo Camera)

Capture low-light shots (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) clearly.

1 **In mode menu,** *Long Exposure* ▶ ●

2 *On* ▶ ●

3 **Frame image on Display** ▶ ●
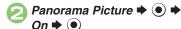
● Shutter is left open for an extended period of time, then captured image appears.

Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

1 **In mode menu,** *Panorama/ Scanner* ▶ ●

Panorama/Scanner Menu

2 *Panorama Picture* ▶ ● ▶ *On* ▶ ●

3 **Frame image on Display** ▶ ●

● Move handset slowly to keep ✛ aligned with either of yellow lines.
● Image is captured automatically when the bar (▭) turns blue.

4 ●

Save Menu

● Image is captured and Save menu opens.

5 *Save* ▶ ●
● Image is saved.

Checking Unsaved Images
 [Save Menu] *Preview* ▶ ●
Sending Captured Images via S! Mail
 [Save Menu] *Send* ▶ ● ▶ *Save and Send* ▶ ● ▶ **Complete message** ▶ ✉

Scanning Images (Photo Camera)

1 **In Panorama/Scanner menu,** *Scanner* ▶ ●

2 **Select size** ▶ ● ▶ **Frame image on Display** ▶ ●

● Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

3 ●
● Image is captured and Save menu opens.

4 *Save* ▶ ●
● Image is saved.

Handling Captured Images
● Preview or send them via S! Mail in the same way as Panorama Picture images.

Editing Images

Getting Started

The following options are available.
Some images may not be editable
depending on file type and size.

■ Picture Editor

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image for size
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

■ Composite

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Picture Editor

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2. *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

3. ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

4. *Picture Editor* ➡ ●

Picture Editor Menu

5. Select effect ➡ ● ➡ Edit
   ● To start over, press [CLEAR/BACK].

6. When finished, ✉

7. *Save as New* ➡ ●
   ● To overwrite, select *Overwrite* and press ●. (Omit ❽.)

8. Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Canceling Effects
After ❺, *Undo* ➡ ●
■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select *Redo* and press ●.

Changing Image Size

■ **Resize to Preset Size**

1. In Picture Editor menu,
   Resize ▶ ●

2. Select size ▶ ●

3. ⊙ Specify display area

   ● To zoom in/out, press ☒ then use ⓢ.
   ● Omit ❸ if there is no rectangle on the image.

4. ●
   ● Editing is completed.

■ **Cropping Images**

1. In Picture Editor menu,
   Resize ▶ ●

2. *Cut* ▶ ●

3. ⊙ Move *+* to the upper left corner of the portion to crop
   ▶ ●
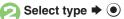
4. ⊙ Move *+* to the lower right corner of the portion to crop
   ▶ ●

5. ⊙ Specify display area
   ● To zoom in/out, press ☒ then use ⓢ.

6. ●
   ● Editing is completed.

7

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🖑 ●Using additional editing options (**P.7-16** - **7-17**)

Face Arrange

1 **In Picture Editor menu, *Face Arrange* ➜ ●**

```
       Face Arrange
Collage:Right-half
Collage:Left-half
Grin
Mad
Sad
 Parts
```
Face Arrange Menu

2 **Select type ➜ ●**
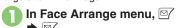
3 **●**
- Editing is completed.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note
- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.
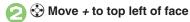
■ **Adjusting Positions**
Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1 **In Face Arrange menu, ✉ ➜ ✉**
- A rectangle appears with *+* in the upper left corner.

2 **Move *+* to top left of face**

```
     Upper Face Line
```

3 **●**

4 **Move *+* to bottom right of face ➜ ●**

```
      Right Eye Upper
```

- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

5 **● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ●**
- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Composite

Panorama Images
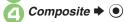
Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2. *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

3. ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

4. *Composite* ➡ ●

5. *Merge Panorama* ➡ ●

```
Merge Panorama
1 XXXXXX_XXXXXX. J...
■ <Empty>
EFFECT Standard

Flip
```

● File selected in ② is set as left image.

6. *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

7. *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●
   ● Editing is completed.

8. **When finished,** ✆
   ● Merged image appears.

9. ●

10. **Enter name** ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Changing Images
After ②, select image ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ Select image ➡ ●

Switching Image Positions
After ⑤, ✉

Advanced

○ ●Combining Reduced Images (**P.7-17**)

Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.
DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity*

2. *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *DPOF* ➡ ●

3. *Number of Copies* ➡ ●

    Number
    For All Pictures
    0 Copy each
    For Each Picture

4. *For Each Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

5. Select image ➡ ✉

    Set copies of selected images.

    (00-99)　00Copy

6. Enter a number of copies to print ➡ ●
    ● For more settings, repeat ⑤ - ⑥.

7. ⦆

   Applying a Number to All Images
   In ④, *For All Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Enter a number of copies to print ➡ ●
   Canceling Specified Number
   In ⑥, enter *00* ➡ ● ➡ ⦆
   Viewing Current Print Settings
   In ③, *Check Settings* ➡ ●

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.
● Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
● Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ●

2. Select image ➡ ✉ ➡ *Print* ➡ ●

3. *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select printer ➡ ●

4. *Yes* ➡ ●
    ● To cancel, press ⦆.

   When Authorization Code is Required
   Enter Authorization Code ➡ ●

Advanced

ℰ ●Changing print settings (**P.7-17**)

7

Camera & Imaging

7-13

Photo Camera & Video Camera

Viewing key assignments	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Help* ➜ ●
Activating Mobile Light	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Mobile Light* ➜ ● ➜ *On* or *Automatic* ➜ ● ● *Low Light* is also available for still image capture. ● Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Focus Setting* ➜ ● ➜ *Macro* ➜ ●
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Focus Setting* ➜ ● ➜ *Manual Focus* ➜ ● ➜ ⟳ Adjust focus ➜ ● ● To readjust focus, press ⊡.
Locking focus	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ⊡ ● To start over, press ⊡ again.
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Picture Quality* or *Video Quality* ➜ ● ➜ Select quality ➜ ●

Sending files	**Panorama/Scanned Images** After image capture (Save menu opens), *Send* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ● *Blog Tool* is available as send option if Blog Setting is complete. **Other Still Images** After image capture (image appears), ✉ ➜ *Send* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ● *Blog Tool* is available as send option if Blog Setting is complete. **Video** After recording (Save menu opens), *Send* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Exposure* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level
Activating automatic saving	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Auto Save* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●
Changing save location	Start Here ● ➜ *Camera* ➜ ● ➜ See below **Still Images** *Photo Camera Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Save Pictures to* ➜ ● ➜ Select location ➜ ● **Video** *Video Camera Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Save Videos to* ➜ ● ➜ Select location ➜ ●

7

Camera & Imaging

7-14

Photo Camera

Adjusting camera's light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *ISO Sensitivity* ➡ ● ➡ Select level ➡ ●
Correcting Face Auto Focus images	**Start Here** After image capture (image appears), ▷ ➡ *Correlate to Face* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Adjusting Face/Background Brightness** *Against sun* ➡ ● ➡ ● **Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions** *Portrait* ➡ ● ➡ ●
Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Picture Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Changing mode according to lighting or subject	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Scene* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●
Setting Center Auto Focus	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *CenterAutoFocus* ➡ ●
Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *White Balance* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●
Changing shutter click sound	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Photo Camera Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Shutter Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are fixed.
Switching to Internal Camera	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Internal Camera* ➡ ●

Hiding indicators	In Photo Viewfinder, ▷ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Indicators* ➡ ● ➡ *Hide Indicators* ➡ ●

Zooming in to check image details	After image capture (image appears), *1* - *9* (Long)
	● Use ⟐ to see outside of enlarged portion. (Press ● to zoom in further.) To return to captured image, press 🔙.
	● Key Assignments:
	  ■ Portrait Orientation
	   1 (Upper left) *2* (Upper center) *3* (Upper right)
	   4 (Left) *5* (Center) *6* (Right)
	   7 (Lower left) *8* (Lower center) *9* (Lower right)
	  ■ Landscape Orientation
	   3 (Upper left) *6* (Upper center) *9* (Upper right)
	   2 (Left) *5* (Center) *8* (Right)
	   1 (Lower left) *4* (Lower center) *7* (Lower right)
	● May be unavailable depending on image size, etc.

Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set *Set Remote Shutter* to *On* beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.
Changing send option assigned to ✉	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Photo Camera Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Send Key* ➡ ● ➡ *Short press* or *Long press* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Change send option separately for each key press method.
Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Photo Camera Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Background Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

7

Camera & Imaging
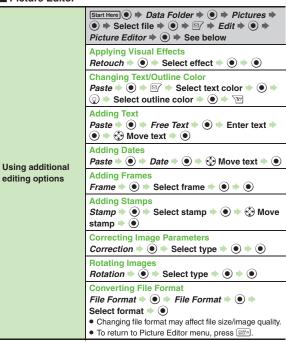
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Photo Camera Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Remote Shutter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	● Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.
Changing Panorama settings	**Start Here** In Photo Viewfinder, ☑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Panorama Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Hiding Guides *Assisting Lines* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture *AE-Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Enable* ➡ ●
Changing Panorama image preview method	In Panorama preview, ☑ ➡ *Manual Scroll* or *Full Image* ➡ ●

Video Camera

Switching to Internal Camera	In Video Viewfinder, ☑ ➡ *Internal Camera* ➡ ●
Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder, ☑ ➡ *Record Time/Size* ➡ ● ➡ *For Message* or *Extended Video* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder, ☑ ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Enlarge* ➡ ●
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, ☑ ➡ *Microphone* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Editing Images

■ **Picture Editor**

Using additional editing options	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Applying Visual Effects *Retouch* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Changing Text/Outline Color *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ Select text color ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select outline color ➡ ● ➡ ☑
	Adding Text *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ *Free Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ۞ Move text ➡ ●
	Adding Dates *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ *Date* ➡ ● ➡ ۞ Move text ➡ ●
	Adding Frames *Frame* ➡ ● ➡ Select frame ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Adding Stamps *Stamp* ➡ ● ➡ Select stamp ➡ ● ➡ ۞ Move stamp ➡ ●
	Correcting Image Parameters *Correction* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Rotating Images *Rotation* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Converting File Format *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ Select format ➡ ●
	● Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.
	● To return to Picture Editor menu, press 📰.

7

Camera & Imaging

7-16

Using additional editing options	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing File Size *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ *File Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Changing file size may affect image quality. ● To return to Picture Editor menu, press ⌫.

■ **Composite**

Combining Reduced Images	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Composite* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Creating Split Picture *SplitPicture 480x854* or *SplitPicture 240x320* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ When finished, ✉ ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Repeat from selecting *<Empty>* as needed.
	Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, ✉ ➡ *View Composite* ➡ ●
	Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ Select another ➡ ●
	Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ✉ ➡ *Remove* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

DPOF

Changing print settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺*Connectivity* ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *DPOF* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding Dates to Prints *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Add Date* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Creating an Index Print *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Index Print* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Resetting *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

7

Camera & Imaging

7-17

Mobile Camera

❓ Display went dark during image capture

● For camera protection, Display may go dark when handset is subjected to strong shocks during image capture. Reactivate mobile camera to solve this.

❓ Captured image appears all white

● When Long Exposure is active (📷 appears), images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

❓ Mobile camera won't activate/shuts down automatically

● Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
● Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
● Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

❓ Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

● Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to *Ask Each Time*.

Editing Images

❓ Cannot save/send edited images

● Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF

❓ Cannot specify print settings properly

● If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.
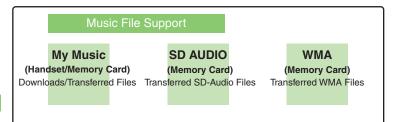
8

Media Player & S! Applications

8-1
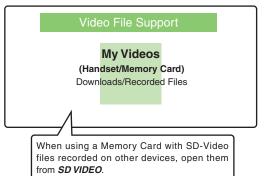
Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 930SH.
- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music
(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Transferred Files

SD AUDIO
(Memory Card)
Transferred SD-Audio Files

WMA
(Memory Card)
Transferred WMA Files

Video File Support

My Videos
(Handset/Memory Card)
Downloads/Recorded Files

When using a Memory Card with SD-Video files recorded on other devices, open them from **SD VIDEO**.

Playback Precautions
- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Media Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming); downloaded media cannot be saved. Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Compatibility
- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

Downloading Music

Download music from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.)
on the source site.

1. ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ●

   ```
   Media Player
   ♬ Music
   ▭ Videos
   ◉ Streaming
   ⊲ Settings
   ⊛ MTP Mode
   ```
   Media Player Menu

2. *Music* ➡ ●

3. *Download Music* ➡ ●
   • Follow the links to download media.

Download via Music Search (Japanese)
   In ❸, *Music Search* ➡ ●
   ■ Follow onscreen instructions.

Downloading Video

1. **In Media Player menu, *Videos* ➡ ●**

2. *Download Videos* ➡ ●
   • Follow the links to download media.

Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

Using MTP Mode

Follow these steps to save WMA files via
S! Music Connect (Japanese):

- For more about S! Music Connect, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**).
- Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.

1 ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ●

2 *MTP Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

```
out 📶          📧          15:05
            MTP Mode


          💻⇄📱








        Attach USB cable.

                          Cancel
```

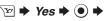3 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the S! Music Connect help menu for operational instructions.

4 ⌨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to
930SH-compatible format (**P.14-21**), then
save to corresponding Memory Card
folder (**P.14-23**) via Mass Storage.
Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

Playing Music

1 ● ➜ *Media Player* ➜ ● ➜ *Music* ➜ ●

2 *My Music* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ Select tab (folder)

Music Playlists Window

3 *All Music* ➜ ●

4 Select file ➜ ●

Music Playback Window
● Album art appears for compatible files.

Stopping Playback
 While paused, [CLEAR BACK]
Using Other Functions while Playing Music
 After ④, [CLEAR BACK] or [↷]
 ■ To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:
  [↷] ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files
 In ②, *SD AUDIO* or *WMA* ➜ ● ➜ From ③
Searching Music Files
 After ③, ✉ *Search* ➜ ● ➜ Enter search text ➜ ●
Lyric Display-Compatible Files
● Press [✉] to display lyrics.

Music Playback Window Indicators

1	Title	**6**	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	**7**	Volume
3	Track number	**8**	Information link
4	Status	**9**	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Music Playback Operations

Replay	⊙ (Long Press: rewind[*])
Skip Forward	⊙ (Long Press: fast forward[*])
Pause	●
Volume Down	⊚ (Long Press: mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	⊛
Switch Sound Output	🔊 (Long)
Open Help	[0]

[*]Release for playback.

8 Media Player & S! Applications

8-5

Playing Video

1. ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ●

2. *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●

   Video Playlists Window

3. *All Videos* ➡ ●

4. Select file ➡ ●

   Video Playback Window

5. `CLEAR/BACK` ➡ Playback stops
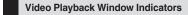
Playing SD VIDEO Files
In ②, *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ ④
Searching Video Files
After ③, ✉ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●
At Alarm Time
● Playback stops.
Video Recorded on Other Devices
● Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Window Indicators

1	Title	**6**	Elapsed time
2	Author name	**7**	Volume
3	Clip number	**8**	Information link
4	Status	**9**	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see **P.8-5** "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	◌ (Long Press: rewind*)
Skip Forward	◌ (Long Press while paused: advance frame, Long Press: fast forward*)
Toggle Display Size	2

*Release for playback.

Advanced

🐾 ●Resuming from stopped point ●Switching audio output to wireless device ●Playing repeatedly or randomly ●Specifying start point ●Changing Sound Effects ●Changing playback size ●Accessing linked information ●Setting Backlight status ●Hiding linked information (**P.8-9**)

Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre.
Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to プレイリスト1:

1. ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ●

```
        Music
Last Played Music
My Music
SD AUDIO
WMA
Download Music
Music Search
Settings
```

2. *My Music* ➡ ●

3. *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉

```
        All Music
🎵 Classic musi…
   No Artist Name 0:04:31
🎵 Classic musi…
   No Artist Name 0:06:07
🎵 Pop music 01
   No Artist Name 0:03:34

        Options
Add to Playlist
Search
Sort          »
Details
```

4. *Add to Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ プレイリスト1 ➡ ●

Renaming Playlists

1. In Playlists window, select Playlist ➡ ✉

```
        Music Folder
🗀 All Music
🗀 プレイリスト1
🗀 プレイリスト2
🗀 プレイリスト3

        Options
Add New Playlist
Details
Edit List Title
Delete Playlist
```

2. *Edit List Title* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

```
        Music Folder
🗀 All Music
🗀 Best Selection
🗀 プレイリスト2
🗀 プレイリスト3
```

8

Media Player & S! Applications

Advanced

🔖 ●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files ●Deleting All WMA files ●Downloading Contents Keys ●Opening properties (**P.8-10** - **8-11**)
●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Downloading Contents Keys ●Opening properties ●Deleting SD VIDEO files (**P.8-11**)
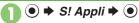
8-7

Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 930SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

Remote Control
- Use *Familink Remote* S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

1 ● ➔ *S! Appli* ➔ ●
2 *S! Appli Library* ➔ ●

```
S! Appli Lib.
  Download
  ブックサーフィン
                    169KB
```
S! Appli Library

3 Select application ➔ ●

Network S! Applications
- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Request Log
In 2, *Demand History* ➔ ●

Exiting S! Applications

1 ⎋

```
        Exit?

      Suspend
      Resume
      End
```

2 *End* ➔ ●

Pausing S! Applications
In 2, *Suspend* ➔ ●
Resuming S! Applications
● ➔ *Resume* ➔ ●
- Select *Cancel* to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused.
- Select *End* to end the S! Application.

Advanced

✎ ●Downloading S! Applications ●Adjusting S! Application sound volume ●Canceling surround effect ●Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions ●Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ●Setting Permissions ●Opening properties (**P.8-12**)
●Moving S! Applications to Memory Card ●Changing S! Application settings ●Deleting S! Applications ●Restoring default S! Application settings ●Restoring default S! Appli Library ●Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 930SH ●Opening Java™ license information (**P.8-13**)

Media Playback

■ Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Last Played Music* or *Last Played Video* ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ 🅑 *Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ●

■ Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	Start Here **During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Repeat One File *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●
	Repeat Randomly *Random Repeat* ➡ ●
Changing Sound Effects	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●

■ Video

Playing repeatedly or randomly	Start Here **During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Repeat One File *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●
Specifying start point	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Time Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Changing Sound Effects	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●
Changing playback size	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Accessing linked information	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Access WEB Link* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Setting Backlight status	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Backlight* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight setting.
Hiding linked information	**During playback,** ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Web Link Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

8

Media Player & S! Applications

8-9

Managing Music Files

	Start Here ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select tab (folder) ➡ **See below**
Organizing Playlists	**Adding New Playlists** ☑ ➡ *Add New Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Deleting Playlists** Select Playlist ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Deleting Playlist Files** Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Changing File Order** Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Move file ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select tab (folder) ➡ *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

	Start Here ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *SD AUDIO* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files	**Deleting Single Files** *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete Track* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Source files will be deleted. **Deleting All Files** *All Music* ➡ ☑ ➡ *Del. All Tracks* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Source files will be deleted. **Editing Title/Artist** *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Enter title or name ➡ ●
Deleting All WMA files	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All WMA* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Source files will be deleted.
Downloading Contents Keys	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select tab (folder) ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with ⍺⁄) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening properties	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	SD AUDIO Files *SD AUDIO* ➡ ● ➡ *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
	Other Files *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select tab (folder) ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding New Playlists ⊠ ➡ *Add New Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlists Select Playlist ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Changing File Order Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Move file ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

Downloading Contents Keys	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with ✍) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	● Follow onscreen instructions.
Opening properties	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	SD VIDEO Files *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
	Other Files *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Deleting SD VIDEO files	● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	● Source files will be deleted.

8 Media Player & S! Applications

8-11

S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ *Download* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Application Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Canceling surround effect	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Surround* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Showing Calls Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Show Call Notice* ➡ ●
	Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail *Incoming Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Priority* ➡ ●
	Showing Alarm Notice *Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Notice* ➡ ●
	Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice *Start Demand* ➡ ● ➡ *Start Notice* ➡ ●

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Activating Screensaver *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Setting Screensaver *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *As Screensaver* ➡ ● ● *As Screensaver* appears for compatible S! Applications. ● Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.
	Changing Screensaver Activation Time *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Activation Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
	Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Stop Auto Start* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting Permissions	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Permission* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
	Resetting Permission Settings *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening properties	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **Select application** ➡ $\boxed{Y}$ ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ $\boxed{\boxtimes}$ ➡ *Move to Card* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose *Yes* or *No* and press $\circledbullet$. ● Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing $\boxed{\boxtimes}$. ● Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	Start Here $\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **See below**
	Enabling Multimedia Communication *Communication* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *On* ➡ $\circledbullet$
	Setting Backlight Status *Backlight* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **Select option** ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight setting.
	Disabling Backlight Flashing *Backlight* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Blink* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\circledbullet$
	Disabling Vibration *Vibration* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\circledbullet$
Deleting S! Applications	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **Select application** ➡ $\boxed{\boxtimes}$ ➡ *Delete* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● Handset Code may be required. ● Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Restoring default S! Application settings	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\circledbullet$
Restoring default S! Appli Library	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Memory All Clear* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) ● Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 930SH	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Synchronization* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\circledbullet$
Opening Java™ license information	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Information* ➡ $\circledbullet$

8

Media Player & S! Applications

Music

How do I delete files in All Music?

● Delete All Music files via Data Folder (Music or Ring Tones).

WMA files do not appear

● Did you use 930SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
● Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
● Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)

Cannot transfer WMA files

● WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Cannot play WMA files

● Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Video

How do I delete files in All Videos?

● Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

S! Applications

Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

● The S! Application may already be saved or Memory Card memory may be low.

S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

● Regardless of setting, a message appears for Screensaver S! Applications.

9

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ●

Calendar Window

Key Assignments

※	Open previous page	8	Go to (Enter Date)
#	Open next page	9	Find (By Category)
2	Stamp[1]	0	Help
4	Set Color	☑	Toggle view
5	Go to (Today)	◎	Select week[2]
6	Find (By Subject)	◉	Select date

[1] Available in Month/3Month View.
[2] In Week View, select time block.

Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, start/
end date/time, Alarm and schedule details:
Either Subject or Description must be
saved per entry.

1 **In Calendar window, select date ➡ ●**

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

3 **Enter subject ➡ ●**

4 **Enter start date/time ➡ ●**

5 *End:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●

6 *Alarm:* ➡ ●

7 *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ☑

8 *Description:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter schedule details ➡ ●

9 ☑ ➡ Saved

All-Day Schedule
In 4, ☑ ➡ ● ➡ From 8
Custom Alarm Time
In 7, ◎ *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ From 8

Advanced

Changing default view ●Changing date color ●Changing task view option ●Adding stamps (Month View) ●Hiding entries ●Removing/restoring preset holidays ●Setting Category/Location ●Saving repetitive schedules (And more on **P.9-30** - **9-31**)

9-2

Handy Extras

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press a key.

Opening Schedule
    While Alarm sounds/vibrates, ✆
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks

1 **In Calendar window, select date ▶ ●**

Schedule List

2 **Select schedule or task ▶ ●**

3 **⌫ ▶ List returns**

Opening Task List
    In ②, select task ▶ ✉ ▶ *Go to Tasks* ▶ ●
Opening Related Message
    After ②, ✉ ▶ *Related Mail* ▶ ●
Deleting Message from Schedule
    After ②, ● ▶ *Related Mail:* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ✆
Accessing Secret Entries
    [Calendar Window] ✉ ▶ *Unlock Temporarily* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ●

Deleting Schedules

■ **One Entry**

1 **In schedule list, select schedule ▶ ✉**

2 *Delete* **▶ ●**
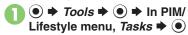
3 *This Appointment* **▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●**

■ **All Entries of the Day**

1 **In Calendar window, select date ▶ ✉**

2 *Delete* **▶ ● ▶ *All This Day* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●**

9 **Handy Extras**

Advanced

🔖 ●Searching entries ●Checking memory status ●Deleting all schedules ●Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) ●Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View) ●Deleting entries in two/six months (2Month/6Month View) (**P.9-31** - **9-32**)

Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.
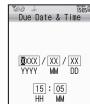
1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ●

All Tasks
<Add New Entr...

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

3 Enter subject ➡ ●

Due Date & Time

XXXX / XX / XX
YYYY   MM   DD

15 : 05
HH   MM

4 Enter due date/time ➡ ●

New Entry
Subject:
Birthday
Due Date:
XX/XX/XX 16:00
Alarm:
No Alarm

5 *Alarm:* ➡ ●

Alarm
Alarm Time:
No Alarm
Assign Tone/Video:
Alert 1
Duration:
10 sec.

6 *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Select
time ➡ ● ➡ ☒

7 *Description:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
task details ➡ ●

8 ☒ ➡ Saved

Task with No Due Date/Time
In **4**, ☒ ➡ ● ➡ From **7**
Custom Alarm Time
In **6**, ⓔ *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ *Other*
➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ ☒
➡ From **7**

Advanced

1

Ⓑ ●Hiding entries ●Editing tasks ●Setting priority ●Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ●Changing Alarm volume ●Changing Vibration option
●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.9-32**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press a key.
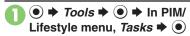
Opening Task
While Alarm sounds/vibrates, $\overline{Y}$
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ●

Task List
● Use ☉ to open completed or uncompleted task list.

2 Select task ➡ ●

3 $\frac{CLEAR}{BACK}$ ➡ List returns

Accessing Secret Entries
After ❶, ✉ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily*
➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Marking Tasks as Completed
After ❶, select task ➡ $\overline{Y}$

Deleting Tasks

■ **One Entry**

1 In task list, select task ➡ ✉

2 *Delete* ➡ ●

3 *This Task* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Completed Tasks**

1 In task list, ✉

2 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All Comp. Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Searching tasks ●Sorting entries by priority ●Checking memory status ●Deleting all tasks (**P.9-33**)
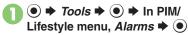
Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:
Set Snooze (Alarm repeats at set interval), Alarm Volume and Duration.

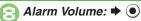1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ●

   ```
   Alarms
   --:--
   --:--
   --:--
   --:--
   ```
   Alarm List

2. *--:--* ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➡ Enter minutes ➡ ●

   ```
   Set Alarm
   Time:
   06:00
   Subject:
   Alarm 1
   Repeat:
   Once
   ```

3. *Repeat:* ➡ ●

   ```
   Repeat
   ● Once
   ○ Every Day (All)
   ○ Selected Days
   ```

4. *Selected Days* ➡ ●

   ```
   Selected Days
   □ Sunday
   □ Monday
   □ Tuesday
   □ Wednesday
   □ Thursday
   □ Friday
   □ Saturday
   □ Except Holidays
   ```

5. Select day ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⊠

6. *Snooze:* ➡ ●

7. Select interval ➡ ●
   ● For custom intervals, select *Other*.

8. *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ●

9. Adjust level ➡ ●

10. *Duration:* ➡ ●

11. Select time ➡ ●
    ● For custom Duration, select *Other*.

12. ⊠ ➡ Saved
    ● For more settings, repeat ② - ⑫.

13. 🔚 ➡ Alarm setting ends

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In ⑤, ☑ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●
Excluding Holidays
In ⑤, select day ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ *Except Holidays* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ From ⑤
Activating Alarm Once or Daily
In ④, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ● ➡ From ⑤

Advanced

✎ ●Editing entries ●Saving entry name ●Changing Alarm tone/video ●Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode ●Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (**P.9-33**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

To stop Alarm, press a key.

When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.
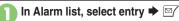
When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval.
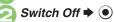Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze
  While Snoozing, ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
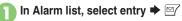● Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔ ✉

2 *Switch Off* ➔ ●
  ● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
  In 2, *Switch On* ➔ ●

Deleting Alarm

■ **One Entry**
1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔ ✉

2 *Reset Alarm* ➔ ●

3 *Yes* ➔ ●

■ **All Entries**
1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔ ✉ ➔ *Clear All* ➔ ●
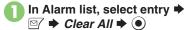
2 Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

9

Handy Extras

Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

- Complete Area Setup (**P.6-4**) beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ **In PIM/Lifestyle menu,** *Wakeup TV* ➜ ●

```
Yıl⊕ ┵              0331M  
           1505
       Wakeup TV
  --:--
  --:--
  --:--
  --:--
```
Wakeup TV List

2 *--:--* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter hour (24-hour format)** ➜ **Enter minutes** ➜ ●

```
Yıl⊕ ┵              0331M  
           1505
       Set Alarm
Time:
08:00
Repeat:
Once
```
Wakeup TV Menu

3 *Repeat:* ➜ ●

4 *Selected Days* ➜ ●

```
Yıl⊕ ┵              0331M  
           1505
     Selected Days
☐ Sunday
☐ Monday
☐ Tuesday
```

5 **Select day** ➜ ● (☐/☑) ➜ **Complete selection** ➜ ⌨

6 *Channel:* ➜ ●

7 **Select channel** ➜ ●

8 ⌨ ➜ **Saved**
- For more settings, repeat 2 - 8.

9 ☎ ➜ **Wakeup TV setting ends**

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 5, ✉ ➜ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➜ ●

Excluding Holidays
In 5, select day ➜ ● (☐/☑) ➜ Complete selection ➜ *Except Holidays* ➜ ● ➜ ⌨ ➜ From 6

Activating TV Once or Daily
In 4, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➜ ● ➜ From 6

Canceling Alarm
- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm On/Off:* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ● ➜ From 8

Adjusting Alarm Volume
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm Volume:* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level ➜ ● ➜ From 8

9

Handy Extras

9-8

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.

Stopping Alarm Instantly
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.

When Another Function is Active
● TV may not activate depending on the function.

After TV is On for a Period of Time
● Confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

₁ **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ▶** ✉

₂ *Wakeup TV Off* ▶ ●
● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
In ₂, *Wakeup TV On* ▶ ●

Deleting Wakeup TV

■ **One Entry**

₁ **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ▶** ✉

₂ *Reset Alarm* ▶ ●

₃ *Yes* ▶ ●

■ **All Entries**

₁ **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ▶** ✉ **▶** *Clear All* ▶ ●

₂ **Enter Handset Code ▶** ● **▶** *Yes* ▶ ●

Using Calculator
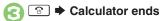
1. **◉ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ◉ ➡ In PIM/ Lifestyle menu, *Calculator* ➡ ◉**
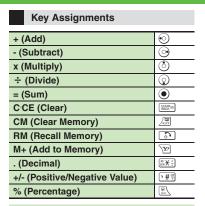
Calculator Window

2. **Use Keypad to enter digits ➡ Calculate**

 - Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.

3. **⌧ ➡ Calculator ends**

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	◉↑
- (Subtract)	◉↓
x (Multiply)	◉←
÷ (Divide)	◉→
= (Sum)	◉
C·CE (Clear)	CLEAR/BACK
CM (Clear Memory)	✉
RM (Recall Memory)	☎
M+ (Add to Memory)	Y!
. (Decimal)	✳
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	#↑
% (Percentage)	🔲

Memory Calculation
 - Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls
 - Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function
Use 🔲 to find definite percentage of a known value.
Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000
  Enter *800,000* ➡ *x* ➡ *30* ➡ *%*
 - *240,000* appears.

Advanced

Copying calculation results Changing exchange rate for currency conversion Converting currencies (**P.9-34**)

9-10

9

Handy Extras

Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

1 Enter amount ➜ ⓠ

Enter Cost:

⬛:DecimalPoint

5040

2 ●

Category
◉ No Category
○ Miscellaneous
○ Vehicle
○ Airfare
○ Shopping

3 Select Category ➜ ● ➜ Saved

Saving under Custom Category
In **3**, *Other* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●

Checking Entries

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ In PIM/ Lifestyle menu, *Expenses Memo* ➜ ●

Expenses Memo
Add New Expense
Totals
Edit Category

2 *Totals* ➜ ●

Totals
1)XX/XX/XX 15:05
Miscell…   5040

Expenses Memo List

3 [CLEAR/BACK] ➜ Menu returns

Saving Entries to Notepad
[Expenses Memo List] ✉ ➜ *Save to Notepad* ➜ ●

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1 In Expenses Memo list, select entry ➜ ✉

2 *Delete Item* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 In Expenses Memo list, ✉ ➜ *Delete All* ➜ ●

2 Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Advanced

🕙 ●Changing Category of saved entry ●Changing amount ●Renaming Categories (**P.9-34**)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 930SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli
● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ●
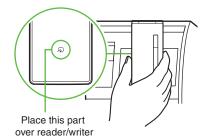
Lifestyle-Appli Precautions
● Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
● Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:
Example: Making an electronic payment
● Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli. Make sure battery is adequately charged.
● Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 **Place 🔁 logo over reader/ writer ➡ Confirm scan results**

Place this part over reader/writer

● Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note
SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor
● If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
● Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Advanced

🔼 ●Enabling to view e-money balances ●Checking e-money balance on External Display ●Moving applications up/down Balance Info list ●Removing applications from Balance Info list (**P.9-35**)
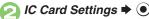
Locking IC Card

IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

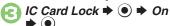1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ●

   Osaifu-Keitai
   Lifestyle-Appli
   IC Card Settings

2. *IC Card Settings* ➡ ●

   Settings
   IC Card Status
   IC Card Lock
   Off

   IC Card Settings Menu

3. *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

4. Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling IC Card Lock
In ③, *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

Mail Remote Lock

■ **Preparation on Handset**

1. In IC Card Settings menu, *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

   Remote Lock
   Mail Remote Lock
   Off
   Call Remote Lock
   Off

2. *Mail Remote Lock* ➡ ●

   Mail Lock
   Switch On/Off
   Off
   Remote Lock PW

   Mail Remote Lock Menu

3. *Remote Lock PW* ➡ ●

4. Enter password ➡ ●

5. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

6. *On* ➡ ● ➡ ✉
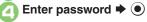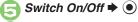
Canceling Mail Remote Lock
In ⑥, *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ✉

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

1. **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**
   - Leave other fields blank.
   - After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

Advanced

🐾 ●Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands ●Opening IC Card properties ●Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient ●Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock ●Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (**P.9-35**)

9

Handy Extras

9-13

Call Remote Lock

■ **Preparation on Handset**

1 In IC Card Settings menu, *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

```
Remote Lock
Mail Remote Lock
Off
Call Remote Lock
Off
```

2 *Call Remote Lock* ➡ ●

```
Call Lock
Switch On/Off
Off
Set Public Phone
Off
```
Call Remote Lock Menu

3 *Phone No. to Lck 1* or *Phone No. to Lck 2* ➡ ●

```
Ph.No. to Lck1
Phone Book
Phone Number
```

4 *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● Select phone number ➡ ●

● Select *Phone Number* to enter directly.

5 *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

6 *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

Enabling Activation via Public Phone
In 3, *Set Public Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ From 5
Canceling Call Remote Lock
In 5, *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Phone**
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset
● Send Caller ID.

2 Handset receives call ➡ End the call
● The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

3 Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice

```
IC Card Lock
Answering
```

● After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call
● Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.
● Pretense Call ringtone is fixed.
● Ringer may be muted by handset settings.
  To override Silent setting, see **P.9-36**.

Setting Pretense Call

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
   Lifestyle menu, *Pretense
   Call* ➡ ●

   > Pretense Call
   > Run Pretense Call
   >
   > Switch On/Off
   > Off
   > Set Caller
   > Empty
   > Calling Timing
   > Immediacy
   > Set Silent
   > Do not Ring

   Pretense Call Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On*
   ➡ ●

3. *Set Caller* ➡ ●

   > Set Caller
   > Name:
   > Empty
   > Phone Number:
   > Empty

4. *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name
   ➡ ●

5. *Phone Number:* ➡ ● ➡
   Enter phone number ➡ ●
   ➡ ⟲

6. ⟲ ➡ PIM/Lifestyle menu
   returns

When Name and Phone Number are Unset
● Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."
Canceling Pretense Call
  [Pretense Call Menu] *Switch On/Off*
  ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⟲

Using Pretense Call

1. ▶ (Long)
   ● Available regardless of handset position.
   ● Handset rings and incoming Voice
     Call window opens.
   ● Ringtone stops after a period of time.

2. **In incoming Voice Call
   window, press** 🔄
   ● Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys
     are dummies.)

3. 🔚 ➡ Pretense Call ends

Setting Wait Time
  [Pretense Call Menu] *Calling Timing*
  ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⟲
When Calling Timing is Not *Immediacy*
● Press 🔚 or 🔙 during wait time to
  cancel Pretense Call activation.
● Pretense Call activation is canceled by
  incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

✋ ●Starting via Pretense Call menu ●Clearing caller information ●Overriding Silent volume setting (**P.9-36**)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➜ *Stopwatch* ➜ ●

   ```
   ▼ᵢₗ⊙   ᵈᵈᵈᵈ
             1505
        Stopwatch

   LAP
   1
   2
   3
   4



   00:00000
   ```
   Stopwatch Window

2. ● ➜ **Stopwatch starts**

3. ● ➜ **Stopwatch stops**
   ● Press ● to resume.

4. ☎ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Stopwatch ends**
   ● Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times
　　While Stopwatch is running, ✉
Saving Records to Notepad
　　After ❸, ✉ ➜ *Save to Notepad* ➜ ●
Resetting Records
　　After ❸, ✉ ➜ *Reset* ➜ ● ➜ From ❷
Incoming Calls
● Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙
Timer/Clock ➜ *Countdown
Timer* ➜ ●

Countdown Timer

Enter Time
(1sec-60min)

00 : 00

Timer Entry Window

2 Enter minutes ➜ Enter
seconds ➜ ●

Countdown Timer

Time Remaining

01:10
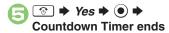
Countdown Timer Window
● Press ✉ to change time.

3 ● ➜ Countdown starts
● Press ● to stop/resume countdown.

4 Set time elapses ➜ Tone
sounds

5 ☎ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜
Countdown Timer ends

Resetting Timer
　Stop countdown and ✉
Incoming Calls
● Countdown is not affected by incoming
calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.

Countdown Timer

Timer Expired

To stop tone instantly, press ✉ or a Side
Key. (Tone stops automatically after a
period of time.)

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call
● Tone sounds after the call.

9

Handy Extras

9-17

Opening World Clock

1 ● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➔ *World Clock* ➔ ●

Tokyo — Local Time Zone

Tokyo — World Time Zone

2 ●

Set Time Zone Window

3 Select area ➔ ●

4 ☎ ➔ World Clock ends

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)
[Set Time Zone Window] ⊠
■ To cancel, press ⊠.
Adding Custom Time Zone
[Set Time Zone Window] ✉ ➔ Enter city name ➔ ● ➔ + or - ➔ ⊙ ➔ Enter time difference ➔ ●

Opening World Clock in Standby

1 ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➔ ●

2 *Standby Display* ➔ ●

Standby Display
Clock/Calendar
Clock (M)
Standby Window

3 *Clock/Calendar* ➔ ●

4 *World Clock (L)*, etc. ➔ ●

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ *Timer/Clock* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ●

   > Hour Minder
   > Switch On/Off
   > Off
   > Select Time
   > Every Hour

   Hour Minder Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

3. *Select Time* ➡ ●

   > Select Time
   > ☑ 0:00
   > ☑ 1:00
   > ☑ 2:00
   > ☑ 3:00

4. Select hour ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ☒

5. ☒ ➡ Saved

6. ☎ ➡ Hour Minder setting ends

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume
In ❷, *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ From ❺

Changing Hour Minder Duration
In ❷, *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ☒ ➡ From ❺
- For custom Duration, select *Other*.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours
In ❹, ☒ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

> Hour Minder

To stop tone instantly, press a key.
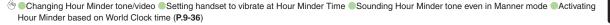
When Another Function is Active
- Hour Minder does not activate.

Incoming Calls
- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

1. **In Hour Minder menu,** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ☒

Advanced

✎ ●Changing Hour Minder tone/video ●Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time ●Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode ●Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (**P.9-36**)

9

Handy Extras

Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)

Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)

Microsoft® Word (.doc)

Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (**P.14-23**).

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Document Viewer* ➜ ●

   Other Docs
   XXXXXXXXXX.xls   51KB

2. Select file ➜ ●

Key Assignments

●	View whole page
⊙	Scroll
＊1＊	View upper left
2	Toggle full screen view on/off
3	View upper right
4/▶	Zoom out
4 (Long) ▶ (Long)	Continuous zoom out
5	View center
6/◀	Zoom in
6 (Long) ◀ (Long)	Continuous zoom in
＊7	View lower left
8	Jump to page
9	View lower right
0	Open Help
＃	Next page
＊	Previous page
⚊	Fit width
⚊	Rotate 90°

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)
In open file, ⚊ (Long) ➜ Specify portion ➜ ✉ ➜ *Zoom Out* or *Zoom In* ➜ ●

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
   Doc./Rec. ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

   Notepad
   <Add New Entry>
   ♪ ガンバレ日本回
   ♪ おめでとう⑩

   Notepad List

2. *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

   Text:
   .a   0/8192

3. Enter text ➡ ●

4. Select Category ➡ ● ➡
   Saved

Sorting Entries Temporarily
[Notepad List] ⍁
- Press ⍁ repeatedly to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry
In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡
Notepad ➡ ● ➡ *Call Notepad* ➡ ●
➡ Select entry ➡ ●

Opening Notepad

1. In Notepad list, select entry
   ➡ ●

   Notepad
   ⊜ Private
   Meeting spot
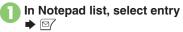
2. ⌫ ➡ **List returns**

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1. In Notepad list, select entry
   ➡ ⊠

2. *Delete Item* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
   ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1. In Notepad list, select entry
   ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Setting/Manage*
   ➡ ●

2. *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
   ➡ ●

Advanced

🖐 ●Editing Notepad ●Searching text within all entries ●Inserting Notepad text into message text ●Sending entries via S! Mail ●Creating text files ●Importing text files ●Checking memory status ●Opening properties (**P.9-36** - **9-37**)

9

Handy Extras
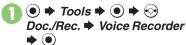
Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- If battery runs low while recording, Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Record conversations during calls via *Record Caller Voice* (**P.3-15**).

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ●

Recording Window

2 ● ➡ **Recording starts**

3 ● ➡ **Recording stops**

- For *Extended Voice*, recording is saved automatically.

4 *Save* ➡ ●

Play Before Saving
In **4**, *Playback* ➡ ● ➡ **Playback starts** ➡ ⌫ ➡ **Playback stops**
Starting Over
In **4**, ⌫ ➡ **From 2**

Playback

1 In recording window, ✉ ➡ *Ring Songs·Tones* ➡ ●

2 Select file ➡ ●
- Use ⌄ to adjust volume.
- Press ● to pause/resume. Press ⌫ to stop playback.

Playing Data Folder Files
● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring Tones* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

9-22

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).
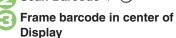
- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
   Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
   ➡ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Scan Text
Scanned Results

2. *Scan Barcode* ➡ ●

3. **Frame barcode in center of Display**

   Normal Scanning

   Scan Window

   Focus Adjustment Bar

   - Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).
   - If focus is poor, press 📷 to switch to Shutter mode.

4. ● ➡ **Scan starts**
   - If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
   - Press 📷 to stop scan.

5. **Tone sounds ➡ Scan results appear**

   Scan Result
   XX Restaurant
   [Open Hours]
   Lunch: 11 am - 3 pm
   Dinner: 6 pm - 10 pm
   [Contact]
   aabb@xxx.xx
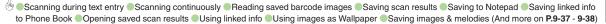
   Key Assignments in Scan Window
   - ＊3：: **Toggle focus mode**
   - 📷: **Focus Lock**
   - ＃：: **Mobile Light on/off**
   - ⊙: **Adjust brightness**
   - ０：: **Open Help**

   Split Data
   - After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
   - Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
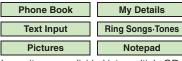
   Starting Over
   - After 5, 📷 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **From 3**

Advanced

✎ ●Scanning during text entry ●Scanning continuously ●Reading saved barcode images ●Saving scan results ●Saving to Notepad ●Saving linked info to Phone Book ●Opening saved scan results ●Using linked info ●Using images as Wallpaper ●Saving images & melodies (And more on **P.9-37** - **9-38**)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs·Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR codes from Data Folder files:

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/Scan* ➜ ●

```
Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Scan Text
Scanned Results
```

2 *Create QR Code* ➜ ●

3 *Data Folder* ➜ ●

```
Data Folder
Pictures
Ring Songs·Tones
Notepad
Other Documents
```

4 Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select file or entry ➜ ●
● QR Code is created.

5 ●
● QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries
In **3**, ⟳ *Phone Book* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ 🖻

From My Details
In **3**, *My Details* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ 🖻

From Entered Text
In **3**, *Text Input* ➜ ● ➜ Enter text ➜ ● ➜ 🖻

Switching Storage Media
In **5**, ✉ ➜ *Save to* ➜ ● ➜ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➜ ● ➜ ●

Attaching to S! Mail
In **5**, ✉ ➜ *Send As* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ 🖃

Incoming Calls
● QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1
● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ ◎
Doc./Rec. ➔ *Barcode/Scan*
➔ ●

> Barcode/Scan
> Scan Barcode
> Open Barcode
> Create QR Code
> Scan Card
> Scan Text
> Scanned Results

2 *Scan Card* ➔ ●

3 **Frame card on Display**

Scan Window

4 ●
- Press 🔽 to stop scan.

5 ● ➔ **Scan results appear**

> Scan Result
> 植田
> ミキオ
> ウエダ
> XX-XXXX-XXXX
> XX-XXXX-XXXX
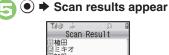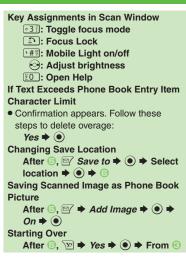
6 ● ➔ 🔽
- New Phone Book entry is saved.

Key Assignments in Scan Window
- ③: Toggle focus mode
- ⌂: Focus Lock
- #: Mobile Light on/off
- ◎: Adjust brightness
- ⓪: Open Help

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit
- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:
  Yes ➔ ●

Changing Save Location
After ⊝, ✉ *Save to* ➔ ● ➔ Select location ➔ ● ➔ ⊝

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture
After ⊝, ✉ ➔ *Add Image* ➔ ● ➔ *On* ➔ ●

Starting Over
After ⊝, 🔽 ➔ *Yes* ➔ ● ➔ From 3

9
Handy Extras

Advanced

✋ ●Saving to Notepad ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.9-39**)

Scanning Text

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or alphanumerics).
Some text cannot be scanned.

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ◎
Doc./Rec. ➜ *Barcode/Scan*
➜ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Scan Text
Scanned Results

2 *Scan Text* ➜ ●

3 Frame text in center of Display

Text Scanner

1. Capture
characters.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX — Focus
Adjustment
Bar

2. Scan when bar is
the bluest.

Scan Window

● Adjust to frame text in [ ].
● Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

4 ●
● Press ☒ to stop scan.

5 Select line ➜ ● ➜ Scan results appear

6 ●

Scanned Text
22/256
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Key Assignments in Scan Window
3: Toggle focus mode
5: Focus Lock
#: Mobile Light on/off
◎: Adjust brightness
0: Open Help

For White Text on Black Background
In **3**, ✉ ➜ *Reversed Text* ➜ ● ➜
Reversed ➜ ● ➜ From **4**

Correcting Text Type
After **5**, ✉ ➜ *Change Mode* ➜ ●
➜ Select type ➜ ● ➜ **5**

Editing Scanned Text
After **5**, ✉ ➜ *Select/Edit* ➜ ● ➜
Select character ➜ Select alternative
from list or edit directly ➜ **5**

Starting Over
In **5**, ☒ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ From **3**

9 Handy Extras

Advanced

🖰 ●Scanning during text entry ●Scanning more text ●Saving scan results ●Saving linked info to Phone Book ●Saving to Notepad ●Opening saved
scan results ●Using linked info ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.9-40** - **9-41**)
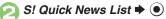
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items
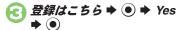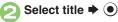
1 ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
 ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ●

```
S! Quick News
S! Quick News List
S! Loop List
Settings
```

2 *S! Quick News List* ➡ ●

```
登録はこちら
S!速報ニュースとは
<未登録>
<未登録>
<未登録>
```

S! Quick News List

3 *登録はこちら* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
 ➡ ●

● Handset connects to the Internet.

4 Select item ➡ ●

● Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1 In S! Quick News List,
 select item ➡ ●

● Title list appears.

2 Select title ➡ ●

```
■ニュース速報
台風7号接近
今年最大級の台風7
号が九州地方に接近
中。今夜にも上陸の
おそれ。河川の増水
```

● Press ⊠ to return to title list, or ⊻
 to open next title.

Updating Items Manually
[S! Quick News List] Select item ➡
⊻ ➡ 更新 ➡ ● ➡ 一件 or 全件 ➡ ●

Indicators

📰	Unread Special news
📰	Read Special news
📰	Unread News Flash
📰	Read News Flash
□	Unread General news
□	Read General news
✕	Auto update disabled

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

✎ ●Receiving S! Loop item updates ●Updating list automatically ●Checking update schedule ●Changing background image ●Deleting S! Quick News items ●Updating S! Loop items manually ●Accessing source sites ●Disabling image download ●Deleting S! Loop items ●Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List (**P.9-41** - **9-42**)

S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Transmission fees apply.
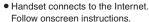
Service Registration & Content Subscription

1. ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●
   ➔ *S! Information Channel/
   Weather* ➔ ●

   > Til◎ ◎   0251回1505回
   > S!Info. Channel
   > What's New
   >
   > Back Issue
   >
   > Registration/Canc…

   S! Information Channel Menu

2. *Registration/Cancel* ➔ ●
   - Handset connects to the Internet.
     Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new
S! Information Channel info delivery.

1. **While Information window
   appears,** *S! Info. Channel*
   ➔ ●
   - S! Information Channel page opens.
     Follow onscreen instructions.
   - S! Information Channel page handling
     is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

2. ☎ ➔ **Page closes**

Opening Unread Latest Issue
[S! Information Channel Menu]
What's New ➔ ●
Opening Back Issues
[S! Information Channel Menu] *Back
Issue* ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ●

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration,
local area weather indicator appears in
Standby.

☀	Clear skies (day)	❆	Snow
☽	Clear skies (night)	⚡	Thunder showers
☁	Cloudy	▷	Then
☂	Rain	╱	Partly/chance of

Example: ☁ ╱ ☂ ➔ Partly cloudy with a
chance of rain
Indicators other than the above also
appear for more information.

Manual Update
[S! Information Channel Menu]
Weather Indicator ➔ ● ➔ *Manual
Update* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
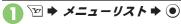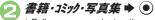
Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1. 🖅 ➔ *メニューリスト* ➔ ⦿

2. *書籍・コミック・写真集* ➔ ⦿
   - Follow onscreen instructions.
   - Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note
- Alternatively, visit SH-web to download e-Books.

e-Book Viewer

Read XMDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1. ⦿ ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ⦿

   Entertainment
   - S! Quick News
   - S! Information …
   - BookSurfing
   - e-Book Viewer

   Entertainment Menu

2. *e-Book Viewer* ➔ ⦿
   - e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1. **In Entertainment menu,**
   BookSurfing ➔ ⦿
   - BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card
- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

9

Handy Extras

Advanced

👆 ●Copying text ●Opening non-930SH e-Books (Library) ●Using Library (**P.9-43**)

Calendar

■ View Settings

Changing default view	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☑ → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Default View* → ● → Select type → ●
Changing date color	[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below
	By Days of the Week ☑ → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Color* → ● → *By Week* → ● → Select day → ● → Select color → ●
	By Date Select date → ④4️ → Select color → ●
	Resetting "By Date" Colors ☑ → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Color* → ● → *Reset Color* → ● → Select option → ● → *Yes* → ●
Changing task view option	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☑ → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Tasks View* → ● → Select option → ●
Adding stamps (Month View)	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ④2️ → Select stamp → ●
Hiding entries	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → *Secret:* → ● → *On* → ● → ☒

Removing/ restoring preset holidays	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☑ → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Holiday* → ● → ⊙ *Set My Holidays* or *Public Holidays* → Select holiday → ● (☐/☑)

■ Saving/Editing Entries

Setting Category/ Location	[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → See below
	Category *Category:* → ● → Select Category → ● → ☒
	Location *Location:* → ● → Enter location → ● → ☒
Saving repetitive schedules	● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → *Repeat:* → ● → Select frequency → ● → Enter repeat time → ● → ☒
	● Repeat time is not available for *Every Year*.
Saving S! Friend's Status information	[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → ● → *S! Friend'sStatus:* → ● → *Link Setting:* → ● → *Linked* → ● → See below
	Availability *Answer Status:* → ● → Edit → ● → ☒ → ☒ → ☒ ● Set Category first.
	Comment *Comment:* → ● → Enter text → ● → ☒ → ☒ ● Set Category first.

Saving additional holidays	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Holiday* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Set My Holidays* ➡ See below
	Adding Holidays *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
	Editing Added Holidays Select holiday ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Date:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Editing schedules	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Alarm Tone/Video: *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠ ● Select start point if required.
	Duration *Duration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⊠
Changing Alarm volume	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Changing Vibration option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

| Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode | ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● |

■ **Managing Entries**

Searching entries	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	By Subject 6 ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
	By Category 9 ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Checking memory status	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ✉ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●
Deleting all schedules	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All Appointments* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Within One Week Select week ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This Week* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Week Select week ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Up to Last Week* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

9 Handy Extras

Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View)	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Within One Month Select month ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This Month* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Month Select month ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Up to Last Month* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting entries in two/six months (2Month/6Month View)	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This 2Months* (or *All This 6Months*) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Tasks

■ Task List

Hiding entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ☑

■ Saving/Editing Entries

Editing tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving tasks ➡ ● ➡ ☑
Setting priority	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority:* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ ☑

Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☑ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Alarm Tone/Video *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ ☑ ● Select start point if required.
	Duration *Duration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ ☑
Changing Alarm volume	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Changing Vibration option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Managing Entries

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">**Searching tasks**</td><td colspan="2">Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Find* ➡ ● ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">**By Subject**
By Subject ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">**By Due Date**
By Due Date ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Sorting entries by priority**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority* ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Checking memory status**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Deleting all tasks**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●</td></tr>
</table>

Alarms

<table>
<tr><td>**Editing entries**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➡ ● ➡ ⚹</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Saving entry name**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Subject:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ⚹</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">**Changing Alarm tone/video**</td><td colspan="2">Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ See below</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">**Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File**
Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⚹
● Select start point if required.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">**Using Customized Screen Tone/Video**
Customized Screen ➡ ● ➡ ⚹</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⚹
● Select *Link to Sound* to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Activating Alarm based on World Clock time**</td><td colspan="2">● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to World Clk* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●</td></tr>
</table>

9

Handy Extras

Wakeup TV

Editing entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Changing Alarm tone/video	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ● Select start point if required.
	Using Customized Screen Tone/Video *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, ⊠ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *Exchange Rate* ➡ ● ➡ *Domestic* or *Foreign* ➡ ● ➡ Enter rate ➡ ●
Converting currencies	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount of money ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *To Domestic* or *To Foreign* ➡ ● ● Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Totals* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Changing amount	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Totals* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change Amount* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Renaming Categories	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Empty* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli* or *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ● ● For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. ● Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.
Checking e-money balance on External Display	With handset closed, ◼ (Long) ➡ Balance appears ➡ ◼ ➡ Balance disappears ● Use ◀▶ to view balances of listed entries. ● Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand. ● Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select location ➡ ●
Removing applications from Balance Info list	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Interface Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Opening IC Card properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Status* ➡ ●

Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Mail Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Notice Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Notice* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Changing Recipient** *To Set Recipient* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Recipient* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ **Disabling Notice** *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⌫ ➡ ⊠
Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Call Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Count for Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Missed Call count ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

9

Handy Extras

Pretense Call

Starting via Pretense Call menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Pretense Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Run Pretense Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Pretense Call starts immediately regardless of Calling Timing setting. ● Settings remain even after starting Pretense Call during setup.
Clearing caller information	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Pretense Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Caller* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎
Overriding Silent volume setting	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Pretense Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Silent* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☎

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File** Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎ ● Select start point if required. **Using Customized Screen Tone/Video** *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎ ● Select *Link to Sound* to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Timer/Clock* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to World Clk:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ☎ ➡ ☎

Notepad

Editing Notepad	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ See below **Editing Text** *Edit Text* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● **Changing Category** *Change Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Searching text within all entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
Inserting Notepad text into message text	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message Text* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ☎ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Sending entries via S! Mail	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Message* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ☎
Creating text files	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Text File* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Importing text files	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Notepad* ➜ ● ➜ Select entry ➜ ☑ ➜ *Setting/Manage* ➜ ● ➜ *Import Text File* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ●
Checking memory status	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Notepad* ➜ ● ➜ Select entry ➜ ☑ ➜ *Setting/Manage* ➜ ● ➜ *Memory Status* ➜ ●
Opening properties	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Notepad* ➜ ● ➜ Select entry ➜ ☑ ➜ *Details* ➜ ●

Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Voice Recorder* ➜ ● ➜ ☑ ➜ *Record Time* ➜ ● ➜ *Extended Voice* ➜ ● ➜ ● ➜ Recording starts ➜ ● ➜ Recording ends • Insert Memory Card to record in *Extended Voice* mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Voice Recorder* ➜ ● ➜ ● ➜ Recording starts ➜ ● ➜ Recording ends ➜ *Save and Send* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⊠ • Available in *For Message* mode.
Switching storage media	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Voice Recorder* ➜ ● ➜ ☑ ➜ *Save Recording to* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● • Available in *For Message* mode. • Set to *Ask Each Time* to select media after every recording.

Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry	**Start Here** In a text entry window, ☑ ➜ *Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *Scan Code* ➜ ● ➜ Frame barcode in center of Display ➜ ● ➜ See below **Pasting All Scan Results** ● **Pasting a Part of Scan Results** ☑ ➜ Select first character ➜ ● ➜ Highlight text range ➜ ●
Scanning continuously	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/ Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *Scan Barcode* ➜ ● ➜ ☑ ➜ *Continuous Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ● ➜ Frame barcode in center of Display ➜ ● • Choose *Yes* to continue scanning or *No* and press ● to view scan results.
Reading saved barcode images	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/ Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *Open Barcode* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ●
Saving scan results	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/ Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *Scan Barcode* ➜ ● ➜ Frame barcode in center of Display ➜ ● ➜ ☑ ➜ *Save* ➜ ●
Saving to Notepad	● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➜ *Barcode/ Scan* ➜ ● ➜ *Scan Barcode* ➜ ● ➜ Frame barcode in center of Display ➜ ● ➜ ☑ ➜ *Notepad* ➜ ●

9

Handy Extras

9-37

Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select number or mail address** ⇨ ⊠ ⇨ *Save to Ph.Book* ⇨ ● ⇨ *As New Entry* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Complete other fields** ⇨ ⊠ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*. ● When *MEMORY:* appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.
Opening saved scan results	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scanned Results* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select file** ⇨ ● ● Select a file and press ⊠ to rename files, open properties or delete files. ● Some files may not open.
Using linked info	**Start Here** ● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **See below** **Dialing Numbers** **Select phone number** ⇨ ● ⇨ ⌕ **Sending Messages** **Select mail address** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Complete message** ⇨ ⊠ ● When *MAIL TO:* appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window. **Accessing Internet Sites** **Select URL** ⇨ ●
Using images as Wallpaper	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select image** ⇨ ⊠ ⇨ *Set as Wallpaper* ⇨ ● ⇨ ● ● If Wallpaper Display options appear, follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select file** ⇨ ⊠ ⇨ *To Data Folder* ⇨ ●
Opening or playing files	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select file** ⇨ ●
Using images for System Graphics	● ⇨ *Tools* ⇨ ● ⇨ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⇨ *Barcode/Scan* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Scan Barcode* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select image** ⇨ ⊠ ⇨ *As System* ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select item** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Specify display area** ⇨ ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying display area.

Pasting to message text	Start Here ● → *Tools* → ● → ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* → *Barcode/Scan* → ● → *Scan Barcode* → ● → **Frame barcode in center of Display** → ● → ✉ → *Send Message* → ● → See below **All Text** ● → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → ● → **Complete message** → ☎ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** ✉ → **Select first character** → ● → **Highlight range** → ● → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → ● → **Complete message** → ☎ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	Start Here ● → *Tools* → ● → ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* → *Barcode/Scan* → ● → *Scan Barcode* → ● → **Frame barcode in center of Display** → ● → See below **Text** ✉ → *Copy* → ● → **Select first character** → ● → **Highlight text range** → ● **Number, Address or URL** **Select number, mail address or URL** → ✉ → *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* → ●

Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	● → *Tools* → ● → ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* → *Barcode/Scan* → ● → *Scan Card* → ● → **Frame card in center of Display** → ● → ● → ✉ → *Notepad* → ●
Pasting to message text	Start Here ● → *Tools* → ● → ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* → *Barcode/Scan* → ● → *Scan Card* → ● → **Frame card in center of Display** → ● → ● → ✉ → *Send Message* → ● → See below **All Text** ● → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → ● → **Complete message** → ☎ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** ✉ → **Select first character** → ● → **Highlight text range** → ● → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → ● → **Complete message** → ☎ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	Start Here ● → *Tools* → ● → ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* → *Barcode/Scan* → ● → *Scan Card* → ● → **Frame card in center of Display** → ● → ● → See below **Text** ✉ → *Copy* → ● → **Select first character** → ● → **Highlight text range** → ●

9

Handy Extras

Scan Text

Scanning during text entry	In a text entry window, ☑ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Text Scanner* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ●
Scanning more text	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Continue Part* or *Scan More* ➡ ● ● Select *Continue Part* to enter additional text or *Scan More* to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **Select number or mail address** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete other fields** ➡ ⊠ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Saving to Notepad	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

Opening saved scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scanned Results* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ● Select a file and press ☑ to rename files, open properties or delete files. ● Some files may not open.
Using linked info	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ See below **Dialing Numbers** **Select phone number** ➡ ● ➡ 📞 **Sending Messages** **Select mail address** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊠ **Accessing Internet Sites** **Select URL** ➡ ●
Pasting to message text	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🔄 *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ☑ ➡ *Send Message* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **All Text** ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊠ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** ☑ ➡ **Select first character** ➡ ● ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊠ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

9

Handy Extras

9-40

Copying text	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ ● ➡ **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Text ⊠ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ **Select first character** ➡ ● ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ ●
	Number, Address or URL **Select number, mail address or URL** ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* ➡ ●

S! Quick News

Receiving S! Loop item updates	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Loop List* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Registering with S! Loop Items *S!ループ に アクセス* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Handset connects to the Internet. Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.
	Opening Information **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Select title** ➡ ●
Updating list automatically	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Automatic Update* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	S! Quick News List *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **Select interval or choose** *On* ➡ ● ● When a confirmation appears, press ●. ● When Special is set to *On*, items are updated every four hours. ● When General is set to *On*, items are updated once a day. ● To cancel automatic update, choose *Off* and press ●. ● Updating items may incur high charges. ● Only available in Japan.
	S! Loop List *S! Loop* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Items are updated about four times a day. ● Only available in Japan.

9

Handy Extras

Checking update schedule	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Check Schedule* ➡ ●
Changing background image	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Skin* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Deleting S! Quick News items	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News List* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	One Entry 一件 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries 全件 ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Updating S! Loop items manually	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Loop List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Entry Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ 更新 ➡ ● ➡ 一件 ➡ ●
	All Entries ✉ ➡ 更新 ➡ ● ➡ 全件 ➡ ●
Accessing source sites	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ Select list ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Disabling image download	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Image* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Deleting S! Loop items	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Loop List* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	One Entry 一件 ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries 全件 ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Resetting S! Quick News List and S! Loop List	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete S! Quick News Lists* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Not available during automatic updates.

S! Information Channel

Hiding Information window for new received info	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing Display Size	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Changing scroll unit	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●
Copying text	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Copy Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, ☑ ➡ *Save Items* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select file ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Save* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ⦿ ● Some files are saved automatically.
Requesting re-delivery	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Get Latest Contents* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Opening page properties	On a page, ☑ ➡ *PageInformation* ➡ ⦿
Checking weather forecast	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather* ➡ ⦿
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page, ☑ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select size ➡ ⦿
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Standby Setting* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Icon Update* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Hiding Information window for weather updates	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Weather Notif.* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿

e-Books

Copying text	In open page, ☒ ➡ *文字列をコピー* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select first character ➡ ⦿ ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ⦿
Opening non-930SH e-Books (Library)	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ☑ ➡ Select file ➡ ⦿ ● Some files may not open.
Using Library	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ☑ ➡ See below **Adding Folders** ☑ ➡ *New Folder* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿ **Switching Folders** ☑ ➡ *Switch Folders* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select folder ➡ ⦿ **Renaming Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change Name* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿ **Moving Files** Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Move* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select folder ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Move here* ➡ ⦿ **Deleting Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ **Opening File Properties** Select file ➡ ☑ ➡ *Details* ➡ ⦿

9

Handy Extras

Osaifu-Keitai®

❓ Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

❓ Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check 🎵 logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

❓ Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

❓ TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Voice Recorder

❓ Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

❓ Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

❓ Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

S! Quick News

Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

10

Communication Services

Using S! Town & S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Town

Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can play games and meet other users.

- To use S! Town, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ●

2. *S! Town* ➡ ●
   - S! Town (S! Application) starts.
   - Refer to the S! Town help menu for operational instructions.
   - When an upgrade notice appears, follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.
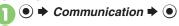
S! Town Library
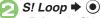
- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps:
  - ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Town* ➡ ✉ ➡ **Select application** ➡ ●

S! Loop

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc. Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ●

2. *S! Loop* ➡ ●
   - Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Using S! Friend's Status

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to *Online* beforehand.

Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

1 #* **(Long)**

If Connection status is *Online*, skip ahead to **3**.

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

3 *No* ➡ ●
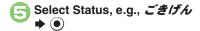
- Choose *Yes* to register members.
- Omit **3** if a member is already registered.

4 私の状況 ➡ ●

My Status Window

- Connection Status

5 Select Status, e.g., ごきげん ➡ ●

Status Template Window

6 Select new Status ➡ ●

7 Select Availability, e.g., *Answer OK* ➡ ● ➡ Select new Availability ➡ ●

8 *<Add Comment>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

9 ☒ ➡ **Update starts**

Changing Connection Status
[My Status Window] *Online* (or *Offline*) ➡ ● ➡ Select status ➡ ●

Changing Status Icon/Label
[Status Template Window] Select Status ➡ ☒ ➡ *Status Icon* or *Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram or enter text ➡ ● ➡ ☒

Changing Availability Settings at Once
In **7**, *Answer Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select new Answer Status ➡ ● ➡ From **8**

Editing My Status Name
[My Status Window] ☒ ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.

1. **In Status Template window, ⊠ ➡ *New Entry* ➡ ●**

2. **Enter name ➡ ●**

3. **<未定> ➡ ●**

   ```
   Status Setting
   Status Icon

   Status Label
   ```

4. ***Status Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●**

5. ***Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ⊠**

6. **Repeat ③ - ⑤ ➡ ⊠ ➡ Saved**

Saving to Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊙ Select template ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to DF* ➡ ●
➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Loading Templates via Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊠ ➡
Add Template ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ●

Renaming Templates
[Status Template Window] ⊙ Select template ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit Temp. Name*
➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Resetting Templates

■ **One Template**

1. **In Status Template window, ⊙ (select template) ➡ ⊠**

2. ***Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●**

■ **All Templates**

1. **In Status Template window, ⊠**

2. ***Reset All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●**
   - Status Template window returns to the default setting.

S! Friend's Status

Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book for the first time. To add members, see **P.10-10**.

1 ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ●
➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ●
➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

> ☐ Add Member
> Phone Book
> Add New Entry

2 *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

3 Select phone number ➡ ●
● Omit ❸ if only one number is saved.

4 *Yes* ➡ ●
● Registration request is sent to the number. Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.

When Registration is Complete
● My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry
In ❷, *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ ❹

Registering from Received Request

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

> Accept the registration request from Kondo Koichi?
> Yes
> No
> ConfirmLater

1 *Yes* ➡ ●
● Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting
In ❶, *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
■ Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
■ For *ConfirmLater*, Information window opens.

Opening Member Status

1 ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ●
➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ●
➡ ⊙ Select Group

> ◄ Group 1 ►
> 私の状況 — My Status
> ●ごきげん
> Ueda Mikio — Member
> ●ごきげん Status
> Kondo Koichi
> ●ぶんぶん

2 Select member ➡ ●

> Ueda Mikio
> 090392XXXX1
> Group 1
> Online
> ごきげん
> Answer OK
> Reply OK
> Join OK
> Standby Window …

When Cancellation Notice Arrives
● Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Advanced

●Adding members ●Deleting members ●Moving members ●Renaming Groups ●Updating manually ●Opening notices ●Sending My Details image ●Rejecting requests (And more on **P.10-10**)

10 Communication Services

10-5

Using S! Circle Talk

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ⌕

 - When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ⦿, then skip ahead to **3**.

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➔ ⦿

```
Yıll⦿ ⇢        1505
    New Entry
Individual
Group
```

3 *Group* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Group Name:* ➔ ⦿ ➔ Enter name ➔ ⦿

```
Yıll⦿ ⇢        1505
    New 0 People
Group Name:
Friend
No. 1:
```

4 Select number, e.g., *No.1:* ➔ ⦿

5 *Phone Book* ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select entry ➔ ⦿

6 Select phone number ➔ ⦿

```
Yıll⦿ ⇢        1505
    New 1 People
Group Name:
Friend
No. 1:
Ueda Mikio
No. 2:
```

 - Omit **5** if only one number is saved.
 - Repeat **4** - **6** to add members.

7 🄨 ➔ Saved

> **Saving as Individuals**
> In **3**, *Individual* ➔ ⦿ ➔ **5** - **6**
> **Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List**
> In **5**, *Members List* ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select member ➔ ⦿ ➔ **7**
> ■ Omit **7** when *Individual* is selected in **3**.

Advanced

👥 ●Editing individual members ●Editing Groups (**P.10-11**)

Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:
Set My Status to *Online* first (**P.10-3**).

1 🔲

> ▥▥▥ 1505
> C/T MembersList
> ‹Add New Entr…
> XXXX XXXX
> Friend

2 Select member or Group ▶ ●

3 ● ▶ **Transmission starts**
 ● S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.

Direct Entry
 Enter phone number ▶ 🔲 ▶ ● ▶ Transmission starts

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ **Speaking**

1 **Press and hold 🔲 when 🔊 *Press and Hold* appears ▶ You have the floor**

> ▥▥▥ 1505
> S!CircleTalk 2
> Ueda Mikio
> XXXX XXXX

 ● 🔊*:Own* appears when you have the floor.

2 **Keep holding 🔲 to speak ▶ Release 🔲 ▶ Floor is released**
 ● Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Canceling Loudspeaker
 During S! Circle Talk, ●
 ■ To reactivate, follow these steps:
  ● ▶ While message appears, ●

■ **Exiting S! Circle Talk**

1 🔲 ▶ **Connection ends**
 ● S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk
 ◎/◎ ▶ Select most recent S! Circle Talk record ▶ ✉ ▶ *Rejoin Circle Talk* ▶ ●
 ■ An error message appears when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1 **While handset is ringing/ vibrating, 🔲 ▶ S! Circle Talk starts**
 ● Alternatively, press 🔲.
 ● S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

🖲 ●Disabling Loudspeaker ●Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (**P.10-11**)

10 **Communication Services**

10-7
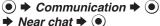
Using Near Chat (Japanese)

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (**P.8-13**) that may be used to reset the application password.
- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

Sending Near Chat Request

1 ● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ●
➡ *Near chat* ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●
- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.

After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

1 *Yes* ➡ ●
- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Rejecting Request
In **1**, *No* ➡ ●

Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

Follow these steps to save blog name, URL (for Yahoo! Keitai) and address for posting:

1. ● ➔ *Communication* ➔ ●
   ➔ *Blog Tool* ➔ ●

   > Blog Tool
   > ① Create New
   > ② Create New
   >
   > Blog Tool Window

2. *Create New* ➔ ●

   > Blog Setting
   > Blog Menu
   > URL(Yahoo! Keitai)
   >
   > Blog Setting Menu

3. *Blog Menu* ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●

4. *URL(Yahoo! Keitai)* ➔ ● ➔ Enter URL ➔ ●

5. *Email Address* ➔ ● ➔ Enter address ➔ ●

6. ☒ ➔ Saved

Setup for PC Site Browser
[Blog Setting Menu] *URL(PCSiteBrowser)* ➔ ● ➔ Enter URL ➔ ● ➔ ⑥
Saving Title/Text for Posts
[Blog Setting Menu] *Title* or *Text* ➔ ● ➔ Enter title or text ➔ ● ➔ ⑥
■ Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.
Setting Image Size for Posting
[Blog Setting Menu] *Picture Size* ➔ ● ➔ Select size ➔ ● ➔ ⑥

Posting to Blogs

1. In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ ●
   ● S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.

2. Complete message ➔ ☒ ➔ Posted

Opening Blog Page

1. In Blog Tool window, select entry ➔ ☒ ➔ Connection starts
   ● Page opens.
   ● When PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser
In ①, select browser ➔ ●

Advanced

✎ ●Editing entries ●Deleting entries ●Posting captured images ●Posting Data Folder images (**P.10-11**)

S! Friend's Status

■ Members/Groups

Adding members	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → ⊠ → *Add Member* → ● → Select method → ● → Select entry or enter phone number → ● → *Yes* → ●
Deleting members	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → Select member → ⊠ → *Registration Release* → ● → *Yes* → ● → *Yes* → ● ● Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.
Moving members	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → Select member → ⊠ → *Change Group* → ● → Select target Group → ●
Renaming Groups	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → ⊠ → *Edit Group Name* → ● → Enter name → ●

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → ⊠ → *Settings* → ● → *Status Update* → ●
Opening notices	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → ⊠ → *Status Notif. List* → ● → Select notice → ●

■ My Details

Sending My Details image	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊙ Select Group → Select member → ⊠ → *Send Image* → ● → *Yes* → ●

■ Settings

Rejecting requests	[Start Here] ● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊠ → *Settings* → ● → *Request Reply* → ● → See below **Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers** *Confirm if Registered* → ● ● Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically. **Rejecting All Requests** *Always Ignore* → ● ● Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.
Saving custom Availability combinations	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊠ → *Settings* → ● → *Answer Status* → ● → *User Setting* → ● → Select type → ● → Select Availability → ● → ⊠
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ● → ⊠ → *Settings* → ● → *Status Setting* → ● → ⊙ Select template → Select Status → ● → *Status Icon* → ● → Select Pictogram → ● → *Status Label* → ● → Enter text → ● → ⊠

S! Circle Talk

■ Member List

Editing individual members	Start Here 💬 ➡ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ See below **Replacing Members** *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● **Deleting Members** *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing Groups	Start Here 💬 ➡ Select Group ➡ ✉ ➡ See below **Editing Group Name/Members** *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select target ➡ ● ➡ Edit/enter ➡ ● ➡ 🖅 **Deleting Group Members** *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ 🖅 **Deleting Groups** *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	💬 ➡ ✉ ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	💬 ➡ ✉ ➡ *Incoming Calls* ➡ ● ➡ *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls* ➡ ● ➡ *Accept Calls* ➡ ●

Blog Tool

Editing entries	● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ 🖅
Deleting entries	● ➡ *Communication* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Posting captured images	📷 ➡ ● to shoot ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ 🖅
Posting Data Folder images	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send/Blog* ➡ ● ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ 🖅

S! Friend's Status

Cannot use S! Friend's Status

● Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

Handset rejected a registration request automatically

● Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

Registration request arrived from a deleted member

● Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

Registration request was sent to a member automatically

● Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

Cannot create Status Templates

● Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

Cannot use S! Circle Talk

● Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

S! Circle Talk starts automatically

● Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

● Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

Near Chat

Cannot receive Near Chat requests

● S! Appli Request may be set to *Off*.

11

Handset Security

Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
Once	One time lock
At Power On	Lock when handset is turned on

1. ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➔ ●

Locks Menu

2. *Function Lock* ➔ ●

3. Select item ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●
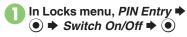
Unlocking Temporarily
While handset is locked, enter Handset Code ➔ ●
When Function Lock is Active
● Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

1. In Locks menu, *PIN Entry* ➔ ● ➔ *Switch On/Off* ➔ ●

2. *On* ➔ ● ➔ Enter PIN ➔ ●
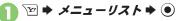
Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock (**P.9-13**). For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.14-22**) or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**).

Accessing My SoftBank

Access My SoftBank as needed.

1. �assistant ➔ *メニューリスト* ➔ ●

2. *My SoftBank* ➔ ● ➔ *English* ➔ ●

Advanced

● Changing PINs ● Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear (**P.11-6**)

Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book	Calendar/Tasks
Yahoo! Keitai	Mail
Notepad	

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In **Phone Settings** menu, *Locks* ➡ ●

> Locks
> PIN Entry
> Off
> Change PIN2

Locks Menu

2 *Application Lock* ➡ ●

> ApplicationLock
> ■ Phone Book
> □ Calendar/Tasks
> □ Yahoo! Keitai
> □ Mail
> □ Notepad

3 Select item ➡ ● (☑ appears)
● For Phone Book, select *No Refer* or *Refer* and press ●.

4 ☒ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Functions
● When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press ●.

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1 In **Locks** menu, *History Lock* ➡ ●

> History Lock
> ■ Call Log
> □ Sent/Rcvd Msg.

2 Select item ➡ ● (☑ appears)

3 ☒ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Records
● When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press ●.

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

1 In **Locks** menu, *Show Secret Data* ➡ ●

2 *On* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

When Show Secret Data is Active
● Predictive is not available for text entry.

Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

1 **Enter Handset Code** ➡ **Shake handset left or right**
● Close handset in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

Using Face Recognition

Capture portraits with mobile camera then match live image to saved ones to unlock handset or access functions/files. If Face Recognition fails, Function Lock activates.

Setup

Precautions

- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
- Handset Code is required to cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code helps enhance security.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is available even when Face Recognition is active.
- When capturing/scanning face, remember these points:
  - Make sure your face is clearly visible.
  - Face should be lit evenly and brightly.

Saving User Information

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ●

2. *Face Recog* ➡ ●

   Face Recognition Menu

3. *User Registration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

4. Select from *User 1* to *User 5* ➡ ●

5. *User Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

6. *Register Riddle:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ●

7. *Register Answer:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ●

8. *Face Image:* ➡ ●

9. Select from *Image 1* to *Image 5* ➡ ✉
   - Mobile camera activates.

Advanced

○Editing/deleting user information ○Changing/deleting portraits ○Changing accuracy level (**P.11-7**)

10 **Frame your face on Display**
➡ ● ➡ ✉

11 *Yes* **➡ ●**
● To save more, repeat **9** - **10**.

12 CLEAR/BACK ➡ 🖅 ➡ **Saved**

Precautions for Portrait Capture
● Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression.
● Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with *Low(Mask)*.

Activating & Canceling

1 **In Face Recognition menu,** *Switch On/Off* **➡ ●**

2 *On* or *Off* **➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●**

Scanning Face

1 **Face the Display ➡ Recognition starts**

2 **If face matches a saved portrait, handset unlocks**
● If Face Recognition fails, Function Lock activates. Press ✉ to retry.

Unlocking Handset after Face Recognition Fails

■ **When No Matching Portrait is Found**

1 **Enter Handset Code ➡ ●**

■ **When Matching Portrait is Found**
Saved question appears.

1 **● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ●**

If You Cannot Remember the Answer
In **1**, 📞 ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
When No Question or Answer is Saved
In **1**, Enter Handset Code ➡ 🖅

Handset Security

11

Advanced

👆 ●Changing recognition guide option ●Opening contact information when recognition fails (**P.11-7**)

11-5

PIN Entry

	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Changing PINs	**Changing PIN** *PIN Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Change PIN* ➡ ● ➡ Enter current PIN ➡ ● ➡ Enter new PIN ➡ ● ➡ Re-enter new PIN ➡ ● ● Activate PIN Entry first.
	Changing PIN2 *Change PIN2* ➡ ● ➡ Enter current PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ Enter new PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ Re-enter new PIN2 ➡ ●

Secure Remote Lock

	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Lock Message* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear	**Saving Message** *Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter message ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Checking Message *Check Message* ➡ ●

Face Recognition

Editing/deleting user information	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Recog* ➡ ● ➡ *User Registration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select from *User 1* to *User 5* ➡ See below
	Editing ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Change portrait or enter information ➡ ● ➡ 🗓 ● Edit items in the same way as saving entries.
	Deleting ✉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Changing/deleting portraits	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Recog* ➡ ● ➡ *User Registration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select from *User 1* to *User 5* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Image:* ➡ ● ➡ Select from *Image 1* to *Image 5* ➡ See below
	Changing ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉
	Deleting 🗓 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Changing accuracy level	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Recog* ➡ ● ➡ *Security Level* ➡ ● ➡ Select level ➡ ● ● When set to *Low(Mask)*, handset recognizes faces with masks.
Changing recognition guide option	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Recog* ➡ ● ➡ *Conductor* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening contact information when recognition fails	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Face Recog* ➡ ● ➡ *Report* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter contact information ➡ ●

Handset Security

11

11-7

12

Connectivity & File Backup

Infrared

Wirelessly transfer the following files between 930SH and compatible devices.

Phone Book	**Received Msg.**
Calendar	**Sent Messages**
Tasks	**Drafts**
Notepad	**Templates**
Bookmarks	**Data Folder**

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. (For details, see **P.12-19** "Troubleshooting.")

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.

- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
IrSS Transfer	Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code
- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

1 ⊙ (Long)
- Infrared is activated.
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel infrared, Long Press ⊙.

2 Connection request arrives

Request Window

3 Perform subsequent operations
- To cancel transfer, press ⊠.

Subsequent Operations

■ **One File Transfer**
Yes ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press ⦿.

■ **All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
Yes ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡
⦿ ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡ ⦿
➡ *As New Items* ➡ ⦿

■ **IrSS Transfer**
Yes ➡ ⦿
- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).
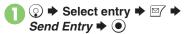
Connectivity & File Backup

12

Advanced
🖑 ●Overwriting existing files (**P.12-16**)

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⓠ ➜ **Select entry** ➜ ✉ ➜
Send Entry ➜ ⬤

> Send Entry
> As Message
> Via Bluetooth
> Via Infrared
> Via IC Transmission

2 *Via Infrared* ➜ ⬤

> Calling not
> available during
> operation. OK?
> Yes
> No

3 *Yes* ➜ ⬤ ➜ **Transfer starts**
● When finished, entry search window
returns.

All File Transfer

1 ⬤ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⬤ ➜ ⊙
Connectivity ➜ *Infrared* ➜ ⬤

2 *Send All* ➜ ⬤

3 *Yes* ➜ ⬤ ➜ **Enter Handset
Code** ➜ ⬤

> out
> 1505
> Send All
> Phone Book
> Appointments/Tasks
> Bookmarks
> Notepad

4 **Select item** ➜ ⬤

5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➜
⬤ ➜ **Transfer starts**
● When finished, Send All menu returns.

Sending Phone Book
● In ❺, follow these steps to select
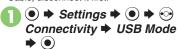whether to send Phone Book Pictures:
Yes or *No* ➜ ⬤

Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

1 ⬤ ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ⬤

2 *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➜ ⬤
For *DCIM*, select a folder and press ⬤.

3 **Select image** ➜ ⚏ **(Long)**

4 *Yes* or *No* ➜ ⬤ ➜ **Transfer
starts**
● When finished, file list returns.
● Transfers are one-way; end even if
files are not received.

Connectivity & File Backup

12

Advanced

🖐 ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.12-16**)

Transferring Files via IC Transmission
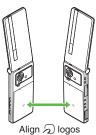
Wirelessly transfer files between 930SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.12-2**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align 🔁 logos of both devices.

Align 🔁 logos

Keep 🔁 logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options
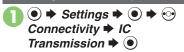
One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.
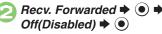
Authorization Code
- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Disabling One File Reception

1. ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ☺ *Connectivity* ➔ *IC Transmission* ➔ ●

   IC Transmission
   Recv. Forwarded
   Send All

   IC Transmission Menu

2. *Recv. Forwarded* ➔ ● ➔ *Off(Disabled)* ➔ ●

Receiving Files

1 **Connection request arrives**

Yıl⊕ ⟵   1505
Receive IC Data

Calling not
available during
operation, OK?

Yes
No

Request Window

2 **Perform subsequent operations**
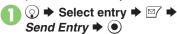
● To cancel transfer, press ⟨Y⟩.

Subsequent Operations

■ **One File Transfer**
Yes ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

● When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press ●.

■ **All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
Yes ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡
● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡
● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ●

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⟨◎⟩ ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ✉ ➡
Send Entry ➡ ●

Send Entry
As Message
Via Bluetooth
Via Infrared
Via IC Transmission

2 *Via IC Transmission* ➡ ●

Calling not
available during
operation, OK?

Yes
No

3 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Transfer starts**

● When finished, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1 **In IC Transmission menu,**
Send All ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

out   1505
Send All
Phone Book
Appointments/Tasks
Bookmarks
Notepad

3 **Select item** ➡ ●

4 **Enter Authorization Code** ➡
● ➡ **Transfer starts**

● When finished, Send All menu returns.

Sending Phone Book

● In 4, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures:
Yes or *No* ➡ ●

Advanced

🔊 ●Overwriting existing files ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.12-16**)

Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 930SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).
Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions
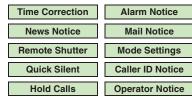
- Bring handsets to within ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Handsfree Device Precautions
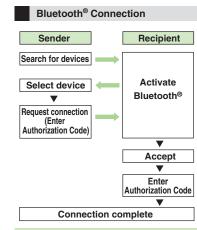
Handle call operations on the device in use.

Bluetooth® Watches

Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:

Time Correction	Alarm Notice
News Notice	Mail Notice
Remote Shutter	Mode Settings
Quick Silent	Caller ID Notice
Hold Calls	Operator Notice

For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection

Sender	Recipient
Search for devices →	
Select device ←	**Activate Bluetooth®**
▼	
Request connection (Enter Authorization Code) →	
	▼
	Accept
	▼
	Enter Authorization Code
	▼
Connection complete	

Authorization Code
- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.

Advanced

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled Switching audio output to wireless device Changing Bluetooth® name for handset Talking on handsfree device Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc. Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (**P.12-16**)
Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.12-17**)
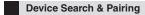
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Toggling Bluetooth® On/Off

1 ⊙ **(Long)**
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.

Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ●

> Bluetooth
> Switch On/Off
> Add Device
> Paired Devices
> Send All
> Setting Watch
> My Device Settings
> My Device Details

Bluetooth Menu

2 *Add Device* ➡ ●
- To disable confirmation, press ⊠ before **3**.

3 ●
- Found devices are listed after search.
- Press ⊠ to cancel.

4 Select device ➡ ●
If handset is already connected to another device, choose *Yes* and press ●.

5 **Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➡ ● ➡ Pairing complete**
- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Connecting to Paired Devices

1 **In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➡ ●**

> Paired Devices
> XXXXX   unused
> XXXXX   unused

Paired Devices List

2 Select device ➡ ●
If handset is already connected to another device, choose *Yes* and press ●.
- The device is connected and ☑ (preferred) appears.

Advanced

🔊 ●Editing Paired Devices list ●Disconnecting devices ●Connecting to devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service ●Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (**P.12-17**)

Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1. **Connection request arrives**

   XXXX
   Add to my devices?
   ```
   Yes
   No
   ```
   Request Window

2. *Yes* ▶ ●

   Enter passkey

   Enter the same
   number as the
   target device.

3. **Enter the same
   Authorization Code as
   sender's** ▶ ●

   ● Complete code entry within 30 seconds.
   ● For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.

Transferring Files
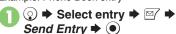
Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

● For transferable files, see **P.12-2**.
● When requested, enter Authorization Code.

Receiving

1. **Connection request arrives**
   ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

2. *Yes* ▶ ●

   ● When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press ●.
   ● To cancel transfer, press ✆.

   All File Transfer (Adding Files)
   In ②, enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶
   As New Items ▶ ●

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1. ◎ ▶ Select entry ▶ ✉ ▶
   Send Entry ▶ ●

2. *Via Bluetooth* ▶ ●

3. **Select device** ▶ ● ▶ *Yes*
   ▶ ● ▶ **Transfer starts**

   ● When finished, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1. **In Bluetooth menu,** *Send All*
   ▶ ●

2. **Select device** ▶ ● ▶ *Yes*
   ▶ ● ▶ **Enter Handset
   Code** ▶ ●

3. **Select item** ▶ ● ▶
   Transfer starts

   ● When finished, Send All menu returns.

   Sending Phone Book
   ● In ③, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures:
   Yes or *No* ▶ ●

Connectivity & File Backup

12

Advanced

🖱 ●Overwriting existing files ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.12-17**)

12-9

Connecting to PC

Accessing Memory Card from PC

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

● USB Cable may be purchased separately.
● If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *USB Mode* ➡ ●

2 *Mass Storage* ➡ ●


```
Mass Storage


  Calling not
available during
operation. OK?
     Yes
     No
```

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

4 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

● Use PC to access Memory Card.

5 ☒ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Connection ends**

● Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

■ **Utility Software**

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/

Mobile Data Communication Fees

● Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.
The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	S! Town
Received Msg.*	Mail Groups
Sent Messages*	User Dictionary

*Selectable simultaneously via *Check Selection* in Options menu.

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly.

Transferring All Items

Use blank Memory Card for *Backup All Items*. Do not use the card to save other files after *Backup All Items*; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Transferring Selected Items

■ **Received Msg.**
- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)

■ **Sent Messages**
Transfer may delete sort keys.

■ **Drafts**
If transferred from Drafts, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ **Bookmarks**
- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ **Contents Keys**
Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

Handset to Memory Card
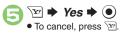
Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Connectivity* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ●

   Backup/Restore Menu

2. *Backup Selected Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

3. *Yes* ➡ ●

4. Select item ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection
   - For *Phone Book*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

5. ⊠ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
   - To cancel, press ⊠.

6. Backup complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In ④, ☑ ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From ⑤
Selecting/Canceling All Items
In ④, ☑ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:
Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Contents Keys).

1. In Backup/Restore menu, *Restore Selected Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

2. *Yes* ➡ ●

3. Select item ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ Complete selection

4. ⊠
   - If no file list appears, skip ahead to ⑦.

5. Select file ➡ ●
   - Repeat ⑤ to complete selection.

6. ●

7. *Yes* ➡ ●
   - To cancel, press ⊠.

8. Restore complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In ③, ☑ ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From ④
Selecting/Canceling All Items
In ③, ☑ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●
Changing Restoration Method
After ③, select item ➡ ☑ ➡ *Change to Add Mode* or *Chg. to Overwrite Mode* ➡ ● ➡ From ④
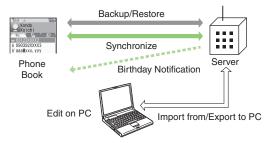
Advanced

ⓑ ●Backing up all items ●Encoding data for backup ●Restoring all items ●Deleting backup files (**P.12-18**)

About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.

- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (**P.12-14**).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see the corresponding Website (**P.14-22**).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	**Backup**	Export Phone Book content to SAB[1]
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book[2]
Synchronize	**Synchronize**	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB[3]
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB[4]
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book[5]
Edit on PC	**Import from PC**	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice[6]	**Birthday Notification**	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification[7]	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification[8]	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	**Tomodachi Email Filter**[9]	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

[1] Any existing SAB content is deleted.
[2] Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.
[3] If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.
[4] Unrelated SAB changes remain.
[5] Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.
[6] Access this function via handset or a PC.
[7] Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.
[8] Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.
[9] Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.

Connectivity & File Backup

12

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.

↓

Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

● User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.

↓

Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ **Unsynchronizable Items**

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

■ Picture, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration

■ **Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion**

● When no Phone Book content exists, selecting *Synchronize*, *Sync from Client* or *Backup* deletes all SAB content.

● When no SAB content exists, selecting *Synchronize*, *Sync from Server* or *Restore* deletes all Phone Book content.

■ **Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities**

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ **Contract Termination**

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ **SAB Transfers to New Handsets**

● **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.

● **Other 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.

● **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ **When Double Number is Active**

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

1. ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Addressbook Backup* ➜ ●

   ```
   S! Addressbook
   Start Sync
   Sync History
   Set Auto Sync
   ```
   S! Addressbook Menu

2. *Start Sync* ➜ ● ➜ *Backup* ➜ ●

3. *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●
   - Backup starts; when completed, details appear.

4. ● ➜ **Backup complete**

Canceling Backup
ʸⱯ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

1. In S! Addressbook menu, *Start Sync* ➜ ● ➜ *Restore* ➜ ●

2. *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●
   - Restore starts; when completed, details appear.

3. ● ➜ **Restore complete**

Canceling Restore
ʸⱯ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

1. In S! Addressbook menu, *Start Sync* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●

2. *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●
   - Synchronization starts; when completed, details appear.

3. ● ➜ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
ʸⱯ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Connectivity & File Backup

12

12-15

Advanced

Infrared

Overwriting existing files	**When connection request arrives,** *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Authorization Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ● For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
Sending My Details	⬤ ➡ ⓪ ➡ ☑ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Transfer starts**
Sending non-Phone Book files	**In file list, select file** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/Blog*) ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Transfer starts**

IC Transmission

Overwriting existing files	**When connection request arrives,** *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter Authorization Code** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ● For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
Sending My Details	⬤ ➡ ⓪ ➡ ☑ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Via IC Transmission* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Transfer starts**
Sending non-Phone Book files	**In file list, select file** ➡ ☑ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/Blog*) ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Via IC Transmission* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Transfer starts**

Bluetooth®

■ General

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Visibility* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Hide My Phone* ➡ ⬤
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Bluetooth Timeout* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select time** ➡ ⬤
Switching audio output to wireless device	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⓑ *Sound Output* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ⬤ ● *Bluetooth Device* is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Device Name* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ⬤
Talking on handsfree device	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Handsfree Setting* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Handsfree Mode* ➡ ⬤
Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *S! Appli Request* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⬤
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *My Device Details* ➡ ⬤ ● Press ☑ to view service details.

■ Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Set BT-Watch Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Permit* or *Prohibit* ➡ ● ● Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.

■ Paired Devices

Editing Paired Devices list	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	Renaming Paired Devices *Change Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Paired Devices *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● To delete a device connected to handset, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Disconnecting devices	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ●
Connecting to devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Select service* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree function* or *Audio function* ➡ ●

Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set to Prior Connect* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	For Handsfree Telephony *Handsfree On* ➡ ● ● For *Handsfree On*, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.
	For Audio Output *Audio On* ➡ ● ● For *Audio On*, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when 𝐁 Sound Output is set to *Bluetooth Device*.

■ File Transfer

Overwriting existing files	When connection request arrives, *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.
Sending My Details	● ➡ 🔟 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/ Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

Connectivity & File Backup

12

Backup

■ Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Backup All Items* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Backup complete** ➡ ● ➡ ●
Encoding data for backup	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Encode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.
Restoring all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Restore All Items* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Restore complete** ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ Backup Files

Deleting backup files	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity* ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *File Management* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● (□/☑) ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ ⌨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

S! Addressbook Back-up

Confirming user ID & password	⌨ ➡ メニューリスト ➡ ● ➡ *My SoftBank* ➡ ● ➡ *English* ➡ ● ➡ *Password confirmation for S! Address Book* ➡ ● ➡ **Follow onscreen instructions**
Auto synchronization	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Backup* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Auto Sync* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Activating** *Set On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● **Changing Auto Sync Frequency** *Set On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Frequency* ➡ ● ➡ **Select frequency** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter/select date/time/day of the week** ➡ ● ● For *After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)*, omit steps for date, time, etc. **Changing Auto Sync Command** *Set On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Sync Mode* ➡ ● ➡ **Select command** ➡ ●
Opening log	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Backup* ➡ ● ➡ *Sync History* ➡ ● ➡ **Select record** ➡ ●

File Transfer

? Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

? Cannot find streaming Bookmarks

- In All File Transfers, received streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Files received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Docs folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.

? Received messages are not saved properly

- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- All File Transfers may save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 930SH).

? Received Msg. folder settings are lost

- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

? Draft messages are not saved properly

- In All File Transfers, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 930SH).

? Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

? Cannot receive some files

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.

? Some files are not received

- If the limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

? Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is *On*

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

Infrared

? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with a soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.

Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

? Cannot restore some messages

- When importing data backed up on other SoftBank handsets, some messages may not transfer depending on the size.

? Some files are not restored

- If the limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Messages are not restored properly

- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail when imported from other SoftBank handsets.

13

Handset Customization

✗ Date & Time Settings

Clock View/Settings	Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone Settings menu, *Date & Time* ➔ ●
Setting the date and time	*Set Date/Time* ➔ ● ➔ Enter the year ➔ Enter the month ➔ Enter the day ➔ Enter the time ➔ ●
Correcting Clock manually	*Time Correction* ➔ ● ➔ *Manual* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
Disabling auto Clock correction	*Time Correction* ➔ ● ➔ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ●
Setting auto Clock correction timing	*Time Correction* ➔ ● ➔ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➔ ● ➔ *On* ➔ ☑ ➔ Select item ➔ ● (□/☑) ➔ ☒ ➔ 🔙
Activating Daylight Saving	*Daylight Saving* ➔ ● ➔ *On* ➔ ●
Changing Time Zone	*Set Time Zone* ➔ ● ➔ ⊙ Select area ➔ ●
Adding custom time zone	*Set Time Zone* ➔ ● ➔ ☑ ➔ Enter city name ➔ ● ➔ ⓧ + or - ➔ ⊙ ➔ Enter time difference ➔ ●
Changing time format to 12 hour	*Time Format* ➔ ● ➔ *12 Hour* ➔ ●
Changing date format	*Date Format* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	*Calendar Format* ➔ ● ➔ *Monday-Sunday* ➔ ●

Display & Key Settings 1

Language	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ **Phone Settings menu**
Switching interface between Japanese and English	*Language* or *言語選択* ➜ ● ➜ *English* or *日本語* ➜ ●

Display Image	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Display* ➜ ●
Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Preset Animation* (or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 3*) ➜ ●
Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select image ➜ ● ➜ Specify display area ➜ ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying display area.
Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ● ➜ *Customized Screen* ➜ ● ➜ ● ● Not available for *Power On* or *Power Off*.
Changing image enhancement option for Standby and video playback	*Vivid Mode* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Changing font of numbers entered in Standby	*Dial Number* ➜ ● ➜ Select pattern ➜ ●

● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), press ⊠ in System Graphics menu to switch modes.

Display Illumination	Start Here ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ **In Phone Settings menu,** *Display* ➜ ●
Changing display transition effects	*Display Effects* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time	*Backlight* ➜ ● ➜ *Time Out* ➜ ● ➜ Select time ➜ ●
Changing Display Brightness	*Backlight* ➜ ● ➜ *Brightness* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level ➜ ●
Canceling/activating Light Sensor	*Backlight* ➜ ● ➜ *Brightness* ➜ ● ➜ ⊠ (☐/☑) ➜ ●
Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off	*Display Saving* ➜ ● ➜ Select period ➜ ●

⚒ **Display & Key Settings** ②

External Display	Start Here ⊙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⊙ ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ⊙
Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off	*External Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Duration* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select time ➡ ⊙
Hiding new received messages	*External Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Messages* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Not Display* ➡ ⊙
Hiding caller's number/name	*External Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Caller Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⊙
Changing Clock view	*External Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Display Date&Time* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select type ➡ ⊙
Changing Clock font	*External Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Clock Type* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select pattern ➡ ⊙

Additional Display Settings	Start Here ⊙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⊙ ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ⊙
Changing Clock/Calendar	*Standby Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Clock/Calendar* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select type ➡ ⊙
Showing/hiding indicators or Softkeys in Standby	*Standby Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Show Indicators* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Status Area* or *Softkey Area* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ⊙
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	*Standby Display* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Show Operator Name* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *On* ➡ ⊙
Showing a message each time handset is turned on	*Greeting Message* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Edit Message* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Enter message ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *On* ➡ ⊙

Handset Keys	Start Here ⊙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Phone Settings menu
Disabling Keypad light illumination	*Set Key Light* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⊙

♪ Ringtone & Sound Settings

Handset Response	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●
Changing ringtone volume	*Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Changing illumination option for incoming transmissions	*Event Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ ●
Setting illumination color for incoming transmissions	*Event Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Light Color* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed incoming transmissions	*Status Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ●
Setting illumination color for missed incoming transmissions	*Status Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Light Color* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
Answering calls with other keys	*Any Key Answer* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Use 0 - 9, ⌫, #, ✽, ⌨, ⌘, or ⌨ in addition to 📞.

● When using Double Number in Dual Mode (**P.1-19**), press ⌨ in Volume menu or Event Light menu to switch modes.

System Sound	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●
Enabling Keypad Tones	*System Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ *Keypad Tones* ➡ ● ➡ Select tone ➡ ●
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	*System Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ Select tone ➡ ●
Changing other System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ● For files with limited usage period, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Disabling System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Tone* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● Not available for *S! Circle Talk*.
Changing System Sound duration	*System Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter time ➡ ● ● Not available for *Keypad Tones* or *S! Circle Talk*.
Changing System Sound volume	*Volume* ➡ ● ➡ *General Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●

Additional Sound Settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Phone Settings menu
Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	*Ringer Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Earphone* ➡ ●
Activating/canceling Speaker surround	*Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ● ➡ *Surround* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

ぞ **Advanced Connectivity Settings 1**

Network	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *NW Settings*
Selecting a Network manually	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select location ➡ ● ➡ *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks to the end	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Add to End* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Deleting preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Adding Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New NW* ➡ ● ➡ *Add* ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network code ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Select NW Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ● After selecting *Add New NW* and pressing ●, Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press ● again and proceed.
Editing Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New NW* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks ➡ ●
Deleting Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New NW* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Switching Network services manually	*Select Service* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ Select service ➡ ●
Retrieving Network Information	*Retrieve NW Info* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Checking Network status	*Network Info* ➡ ●
Editing access point names for communication with external devices	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ Select name ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●
Clearing access point names for communication with external devices	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

✗ **Advanced Connectivity Settings 2**

Location Information   Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ⊙ *NW Settings* ➔ *Location Info* ➔ ●

Adding/editing Location Information destination URLs	*URL Setting* ➔ ● ➔ *\<Empty\>* (or select URL) ➔ ✉ ➔ *Edit* ➔ ● ➔ Enter URL ➔ ● **Default URL is not editable.**
Specifying Location Information destination URL	*URL Setting* ➔ ● ➔ Select URL ➔ ●
Viewing Location Information destination URL	*URL Setting* ➔ ● ➔ Select URL ➔ ✉ ➔ *Display* ➔ ●
Deleting Location Information destination URLs	*URL Setting* ➔ ● ➔ Select URL ➔ ✉ ➔ *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
Hiding Location Information	*Datum On/Off* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●
Changing Location Information confirmation option	*Location Prop.* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

IP Service   Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone Settings menu, *Locks* ➔ ●

Disabling IP Service	*IP Service Setting* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

● When *Off*, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call and S! Appli Communication are disabled.

Handset Customization

13

13-7

𝒳 Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Master Reset* ➡ ⦿

Restoring default handset settings	*Reset Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ● Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	*Reset All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ● Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) ● Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications. ● Handset Code returns to the default setting.

● A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
● When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.

14

Appendix

About USIM Card
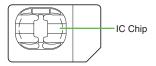
USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions

IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card; both are *9999* by default.

PIN	Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset
PIN2	Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost, etc.

PIN Lock
- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock
- Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:
  Enter PUK Code ➔ ⦿ ➔ Enter new PIN/PIN2 ➔ ⦿ ➔ Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 ➔ ⦿
  - Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**) for recovery.
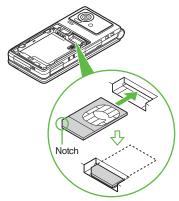
USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

1. **Remove battery (P.14-4)**

2. **Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up**

Notch

- Reinstall battery (**P.14-4**).

Removing

Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

1. **Remove battery (P.14-4)**

2. **Gently slide out USIM Card as shown**

- Reinstall battery (**P.14-4**).

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery
- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

  Li-ion00

  - To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
  - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

Inserting & Removing

➊ Remove cover

Battery Cover

- Press and slide as shown.

➋ Insert battery

- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

➌ Close cover

- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing
- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.

Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1 ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ In Phone Settings menu, *Software Update* ➜ ●

2 *Phone Update* ➜ ●

> Phone Update
> Update software in a place where signal conditions are strong/stable. All incoming and outgoing signals will be disabled for the duration of this update. Continue?

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)
In **2**, *Update Period* ➜ ●
■ Follow onscreen instructions.
Update Result
In **2**, *Update Result* ➜ ●

Scheduled Update

Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ● or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

A message appears and handset reboots.

> Software Update
>
> Updated successfully.
> Rebooting phone...

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result
While Information window appears,
Update Result ➜ ●
Reboot Failure
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.14-40**).

Troubleshooting

■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was 🔘 pressed long enough?	Press 🔘 longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.14-4**).
Handset won't respond	Is *Switch On/Off* in PIN Entry *On*?	If *On*, PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card **appears**	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
REFRESH **appears and handset returns to Standby**	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active (📱 appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (**P.1-18**).
	Function Lock may be active (📖 appears).	Cancel Function Lock (**P.11-2**).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (**P.11-3**).
Cannot use Predictive	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 930SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.

■ Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.14-4**).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, S! Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time, etc.

Appendix

14

14-7

Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ ァィゥェォ	@./-1 □ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんーー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
✻	゛゜	゛゜ －[1]	————	✳ + P (pause) ? -[2]	————
		Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List[3]			
#		、。	、。	#	————
		◢ (line break) ？！ □ (space)			

[1] - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.
[2] Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.
[3] May not be enterable in some windows.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
$\circledcirc$	Conversion (up)[4]	Cursor up			
$\circledcirc$	Conversion (down)[5]	Cursor down ↵ (line break)			
$\odot$	Cursor left				
$\odot$	Cursor right				
🔡	Change entry mode				
🔡	Toggle case (for some characters)				
			Toggle mode (upper/lower and lower case)		
CLEAR/BACK	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion				Delete code
CLEAR/BACK (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
⏪	Recover characters deleted with CLEAR/BACK				
	Re-convert[6]				
●	OK				
✉	Phonetic Conversion				
Y!	Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion				

[4] Cursor moves up except during conversion.

[5] Cursor moves down except during conversion.

[6] Press ⏪ immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press 🔑 to switch immediately after character entry.

■ **Double-byte Upper Case**

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next)									
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**0**
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		🕿	*1
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	✕	#	Space	♥	*2
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

■ **Single-byte Upper Case**

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next)									
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**0**
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		🕿	*1
8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	✕	#	Space	♥	*2
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾞ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

■ **Double-byte Lower Case**

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next)									
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**0**
1	ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			っ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										*1
8	ゃ		ゅ		ょ					*2
9										
0				、	。					

■ **Single-byte Lower Case**

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next)									
	1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**0**
1	ｧ	ｨ	ｩ	ｪ	ｫ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										*1
8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*2
9										
0				､	｡					

*1 Press ⚹7₈🔟 to insert ↵ (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.
*2 Press ⚹8₈🔟 to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Character Code List

Block 1

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	Space	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	
011	！	″	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿
012	ヽ	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー
013	―	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	'
014	'	"	"	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛
015	｝	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【
016	】	＋	−	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞
017	≦	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃
018	￥	＄	¢	£	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§
019	☆	★	○	●	◎	◇				
020	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒	
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	¬	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026					∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡
027	≒	≪	≫	√	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬	
028				Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡
029	¶								◯	
031							0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				
033				Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ
034	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ
035	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	
036							ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ
037	ｅ	ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ
038	ｏ	ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ
039	ｙ	ｚ								
040				ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ
041	え	ぉ	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け
042	げ	こ	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ
043	ぜ	そ	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ
044	て	で	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は
045	ば	ぱ	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ
046	ぺ	ほ	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ

Block 2

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
047	や	ゅ	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ
048	ゎ	わ	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん				
050				ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ
051	エ	ォ	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ
052	ゲ	コ	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ
053	ゼ	ソ	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ
054	テ	デ	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ
055	バ	パ	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ
056	ペ	ホ	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ
057	ヤ	ュ	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ
058	ヮ	ワ	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ	
060				Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η
061	Θ	Ι	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ
062	Σ	Τ	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω			
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070				А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё
071	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П
072	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ
073	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я				
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080				─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├
081	┬	┤	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗
082	┣	┳	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿
083	┝	┰	┥	┸	╂					
160								亜	唖	娃
	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢				

Block 3

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								

い

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170	院	陰	隠	韻	吋					

う

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
170							右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲							

え

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩			

お

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180	押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬	鴎
181	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶	牡
182	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音			

か

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕

Block 4

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190	魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥	蟹
191	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖	慨
192	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬	馨
193	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓	拡
194	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角	赫
195	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額	顎
196	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝	恰
197	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹	叶
198	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌	噛
199	鴨	栢	茅	萱	粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃
200	冠	寒	刊	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完
201	官	寛	干	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢
202	柑	桓	棺	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環
203	甘	監	看	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝
204	艦	莞	観	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関
205	陥	韓	館	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌
206	眼	岩	翫	贋	雁	頑	顔	願		

き

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
207			企	伎	危	喜	器	基	奇	嬉
208	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机	旗	既	期
209	棋	棄	機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季
210	稀	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢
211	騎	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬
212	欺	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊
213	鞠	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍
214	却	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及
215	吸	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸
216	球	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去
217	居	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸
218	漁	禦	魚	亨	享	京	供	侠	僑	兇
219	競	共	凶	協	匡	卿	叫	喬	境	峡
220	強	彊	怯	恐	恭	挟	教	橋	況	狂
221	狭	矯	胸	脅	興					
222										

This page is a JIS character-code reference table. Each cell is the character for the code formed by the **First Three Digits** (row) plus the **Last Digit** 0–9 (column). Kana group markers (く, け, こ, さ, し, す, せ, そ, た, ち …) indicate reading-group boundaries.

First Three Digits 223–256

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	九
く										
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230	掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂	栗
231	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍	
232	郡	卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
け										
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240	検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県	
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺			個	古	呼	固
こ										
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250	后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工	巧
251	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗	拘
252	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構	江
253	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠	紅
254	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏	航
255	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱	砿
256	鋼	閣	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫	

First Three Digits 257–292

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
さ										
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270	察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐	鯖
271	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山	惨
272	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕	讃
273	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残	仕	仔	伺	使
し										
274	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿	子
275	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯	施
276	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸	紙
277	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌	諮
278	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児	字
279	寺	慈	持	時	次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔
280	磁	示	而	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式
281	識	鴫	竺	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失
282	嫉	室	悉	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠
283	偲	柴	芝	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨
284	赦	斜	煮	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇
285	邪	借	勺	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫
286	若	寂	弱	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊
287	狩	珠	種	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪
288	寿	授	樹	綬	需	囚	収	周	宗	就
289	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋	終	繍	習
290	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴	輯	週	酋
291	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十	従	戎	柔
292	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔	夙	宿	淑

First Three Digits 293–328

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
293	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術	述	俊	峻
294	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循	旬	楯	殉
295	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵	醇	順	処
296	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒	署	書	薯
297	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐	恕	鋤	除
298	傷	償	勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗
299	奨	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床
300	廠	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭
301	晶	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼
302	焦	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑
303	粧	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証
304	詔	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘
305	上	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢
306	常	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸
307	譲	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾	拭	植	殖	燭
308	織	職	色	触	食	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信
309	侵	唇	娠	寝	審	心	慎	振	新	晋
310	森	榛	浸	深	申	疹	真	神	秦	紳
311	臣	芯	薪	親	診	身	辛	進	針	震
312	人	仁	刃	塵	壬	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊
313	迅	陣	靭						笋	荀	諏
す										
315	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
316	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
317	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
318	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾	澄	摺	寸		
せ										
319			世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制	勢	姓
320	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲	栖	正
321	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製	西	誠
322	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税	脆	隻
323	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積	籍	績
324	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙	接	摂
325	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌	蝉	仙
326	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦	扇	撰
327	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎		
328										

First Three Digits 329–363

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
329						煽	旋	穿	箭	線
330	繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践	
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎	噌	塑	岨	措	曾
そ										
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎	臓	蔵	贈	造	促
340	側	則	即	息	捉	束	測	足	速	俗
341	属	賊	族	続	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫
342	尊	損	村	遜						
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
た										
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350	叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿	棚
351	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦	担
352	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪	綻
353	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断	暖
354	檀	段	男	談	値	知	地	弛	恥	智
ち										
355	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築	畜
356	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着	中
357	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷	註
358	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯	丁
359	兆	凋	喋	寵	帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫
360	徴	懲	挑	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴
361	脹	腸	蝶	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂
362	鳥	勅	捗	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳
363										

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
— つ —										
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
— て —										
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370	邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴	
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
— と —										
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380	董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透	
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						
— な —										
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
— に —										
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			
— ぬ～の —										
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
— は —										
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400	函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌	
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
— ひ —										
405										匪
406	卑	否	妛	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410	鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱	
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻	
415	敏	瓶								
— ふ —										
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420	福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏	
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				
— へ —										
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									
— ほ —										
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430	法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬	
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
— ま —										
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	沫	迄	侭	
439	繭	麿	万	慢	満					
440	漫	蔓								
— み —										
440			味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密	
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
— む —										
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
— め —										
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
— も —										
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儚	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
— や —										
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
— ゆ —										
449							愉	愈	油	癒
450	諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽	
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
— よ —										
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擢	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
— ら —										
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
— り —										
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460	痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立	
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
— る～れ —										
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470	蓮	連	錬							
— ろ —										
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
— わ —										
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
477										
478										
479										
480				弌	丕	个	丱		丼	丿
481	乂	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于
482	亞	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄
483	仆	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估
484	佛	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩
485	佰	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘
486	俛	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪
487	倥	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們
488	倆	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬
489	偸	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲				
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣
491	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚
492	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌
498	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍
499	劔	劒	剱	劈	劑	辨				
500		辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁	勍	勗	勞
501	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸	勹	匆	匈
502	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣	匯	匱	匳
503	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍	凖	卞	卩
504	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠	厦	厥	厮
505	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼	燮	叮	叨
506	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭	吼	吮	吶
507	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟	呱	呷	呰
508	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆	哇	咢	咸
509	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨					
510		咫	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌
512	售	啜	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚬	嚮	嚶	嚴
518	囂	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗
519	囮	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉	圈	國	圍	圓
520	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦	圷	圸	坂	圻	址
521	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳
522	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆	埔	埒	埓	堊	埖
523	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀
524	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻
525	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜
526	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊
527	夐	夆	夛	梦	夥	夬	夭	夲	夸	夾
528	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘	奢	奠	奧	奬
529	奩	奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
530	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
531	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾
532	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻
533	嬌	嬋	嬲	嫐	嬖	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅
534	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵
535	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉
536	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶
537	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸
538	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓	屐	屏	孱	屬	屮
539	乢	屶	屹	岌	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶
540	岼	岷	峅	岾	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭
541	嶌	峪	崋	崕	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔
542	崢	崚	崙	崘	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳
543	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐
544	嶷	嶼	巉	巍	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已
545	巵	帋	帚	帙	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃
546	幀	幎	幗	幔	幟	幢	幣	幇	幵	并
547	幺	麼	广	庠	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏	廖
548	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩	廬	廱
549	廳	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝	彜	弋
550	弑	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彅	彈	彌	彎
551	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷	徃
552	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘	徠
553	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝	悳
554	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛	怕
555	怫	怦	快	怺	恚	恁	恪	恊	恆	恍
556	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙	悁	悍	惧

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
557	怕	怫	怦	快	怺	恚	恁	恪	恊	悋
558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙
559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚	悄	悛	悖	悗	悒
560	悧	悋	惡	悸	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆
561	悵	惘	慍	愕	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺
562	愃	愡	惻	惱	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧
563	慊	愿	愼	愬	愀	慷	慙	慚	慫	慴
564	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖	憇
565	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊	應
566	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦	懣
567	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈	戉
568	戍	戌	戔	戛	戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲
569	戳	扁	扎	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂
570	抉	找	抒	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑
571	抻	拏	拿	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂
572	拇	抛	拉	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯
573	拵	捐	挾	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫
574	捶	掣	掏	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩
575	揀	揆	揣	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆
576	搓	搦	搶	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶
577	摎	攪	撕	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼	據	擒
578	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱	擧	舉	擠	擡
579	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲	擺	攀	擽
580	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫	攴	攵	攷	收
581	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘	敞	敝	敲
582	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫	斷	旃	旆
583	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无	旡	旱	杲
584	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴	昜	晏	晄
585	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨	晟	晢	晰
586	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝	曀	暹	曉
587	暾	暼	曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩
588	曰	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮
589	朿	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣
590	杤	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡
591	枅	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞
592	柝	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框
593	栩	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷
594	桿	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹
595	桴	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈
596	棘	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍	棔	棧	棕	椶

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴
598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍	棔	棧	棕	椶	椒
600	椄	棗	棣	椥	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚
601	椣	椡	棆	楹	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾
602	楮	椹	楴	椽	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁
603	楪	榲	榮	槐	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨
604	槊	槝	榻	槃	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕
605	榴	槞	槨	樂	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧
606	樅	榱	樞	槭	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣
607	樓	橄	樌	橲	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦
608	橈	樸	樢	檐	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣	檗
609	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞	櫑	櫟
610	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒	欖	鬱
611	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃	歉	歐
612	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿	殀	殄
613	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫	殯	殲
614	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟	毬	毫
615	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤	氣	汞
616	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛	汾	汨
617	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗	泅	泝
618	沮	沱	沾	沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍
619	洶	洫	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣
620	涓	浤	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹
621	渕	渊	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌
622	淨	淒	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭
623	湮	渮	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶
624	湍	渟	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂
625	溪	溘	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔
626	滕	溏	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸
627	滾	漿	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌	漾	漓	滷
628	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯	潛	濳	潭	澂
629	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦	澳	澣	澡	澤
630	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬	濔	濘	濱	濮
631	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚
632	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾	瀲	灑	灣	炙
633	瀾	灏	灞	灝	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱
634	炬	炮	炭	炮	炷	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽
635	焜	焙	煥	煕	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬
636	熏	燻	熄	熕	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
637	熙	熙	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	煩	熨	熬	爛	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燦	燧	燵	燼	爍	爛	爚	爬	爰
640	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牋	牐	牴	牾	牿
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牋	牴	牴	牾	牿
642	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犨	牴	牾	牿
643	犲	狄	狒	狢	狄	狹	狷	倏	狠	狼
644	猗	猊	猜	猝	猴	猖	猩	猥	猾	猯
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻	獺
646	獼	珈	玳	珍	玻	珀	珂	珞	璢	瑙
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	珺	瑕	瑰	瑟	瑁	瑣
648	瑪	瑤	瑩	瓔	瑪	瑾	璋	璞	璧	璨
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650			瓠	瓣	瓦	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	甄
651	甃	甄	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞	甦	甞
652	甌	甬	甼	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畤	畭
653	畩	畤	畧	畸	當	疆	疇	畴	疊	疉
654	疊	疵	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳	痃
655	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙	痣
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660			癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎	皓
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷	眸
664	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹	瞎
665	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碌	碉	碣	碏	碪	碡	碞	碭	磋	碴
669	碸	碼	碆	磊	磬					
670			磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙
671	礬	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺
672	祿	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺
673	秉	秕	秋	秣	稈	稍	稗	稱	稷	稙
674	稟	稟	稱	稻	稾	稷	穡	穢	穩	龝
675	穰	穭	穰	窒	穿	窈	窗	窕	窘	窖
676	窩	窰	窶	竃	窿	窶	邃	竇		

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅
680	筵	筥	筴	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘
681	箟	筰	筱	箴	篁	箔	篆	篁	篌	篏
682	箮	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篁	篦
683	箴	篶	篁	篷	簑	簔	篁	篝	篩	簑
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籐	籏	籖	籟	籙	籤	籬	籵	粃	粐
687	粘	粱	粞	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690			紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲
691	紿	紵	絆	絳	絖	�best	絎	絲	綷	綵
692	絲	經	綉	綏	絽	綛	絣	綵	綠	綷
693	緇	綽	�albe	綺	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	綟	緲	緡	縅	縊
695	縣	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦
696	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繞	繚	繛	繝
697	繖	繞	繙	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纊	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700			罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔
701	罘	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃
702	羈	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脱						
710			脯	腋	隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼
711	腱	腮	腥	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂
712	膠	膕	膤	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾
713	膸	膽	臀	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘
714	臈	臚	臟	臠	臍	臥	臾	舁	舂	舅
715	與	舊	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀
716	艙	艘	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720			茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐
721	荅	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢
722	莖	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠
723	莊	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉	莠	莉	莢	莢
724	莊	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉	莠	莉	莢	莢
725	莟	莢	莟	莢	莟	莢	莟	莢	莟	莢
726	萢	萪	萪	莟	莢	莟	莢	莟	莢	莟
727	蒿	蒻	蒺	蓊	蕘	蓮	蓼	蓚	蓐	蓁
728	蒡	蒹	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730			蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑
731	薊	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾
732	薐	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740			蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯
741	蟋	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆
742	螻	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎
743	蟒	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧
744	蠻	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾
745	袞	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙
746	袍	袢	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔
747	裘	裙	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄
748	褌	褊	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄
749	褻	褶	褸	襌	褝					
750			襠	襞	襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴
751	襷	襾	覃	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦
752	覬	覯	覲	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝
753	觧	觴	觸	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥
754	訶	詁	詛	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢
755	誅	誂	誄	誣	誦	誚	誡	誑	誥	誦
756	誾	諌	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譖	譫	譬	譯	譴	譽
760			讀	讌	讎	讒	讓	讖	讙	讚
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770			蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠
771	踪	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄
772	躋	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰
773	軆	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780			遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖
781	遖	遘	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽
782	邁	邀	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢
783	郤	扈	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖
784	酘	酣	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢
785	醪	醯	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋
786	釐	釖	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿
787	鈔	鈬	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉊	鉋	鉐	銷
788	鉗	鉥	鉄	鉞	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790			錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜
791	鍠	鍼	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗	鏨
792	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔	鐓
793	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁	鑒
794	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵	鑷
795	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊	閔
796	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻	閹

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
797	閭	閱	閬	閹	潤	闉	闇	闌	闕	闔
798	闖	闡	闢	關	阡	阢	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陌	陘	陜					
800		陝	陞	陟	陘	陬	陲	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隤	隰	隴	隸	佳	雎	
802	隽	雉	雍	襍	雑	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靳	靷	靸	靺	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟	
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頹	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	飭	餉	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饕	饗	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髣	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬼	魁	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴥	鴗	鴇	鴾	鴫	鴈	鳫	鴟	鴝	鴛
829	鴎	鴣	鴟	鴥	鴨					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶻	鶸	鶥	鶿	鷃	鷂
832	鷁	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞
833	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑
834	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏
835	黐	黔	黜	點	黝	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴
836	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
837	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡
838	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠
839	堯	槙	遙	瑤	凜	熙				
840										

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

Weather Indicator List

Basic Status	
☀	Clear skies (day)
☽	Clear skies (night)
☁	Cloudy
☂	Rain
☃	Snow
⚡	Thunder showers
0%	Chance of rain: 0%
10%	Chance of rain: 10%
20%	Chance of rain: 20%
30%	Chance of rain: 30%
40%	Chance of rain: 40%
50%	Chance of rain: 50%
60%	Chance of rain: 60%
70%	Chance of rain: 70%
80%	Chance of rain: 80%
90%	Chance of rain: 90%
100%	Chance of rain: 100%
▷	Then
╱	Partly/chance of

Pollen Count	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

Cherry Blossom	
	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall

Fall Foliage	
	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating

Ultraviolet	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

Disaster	
	Heavy rain
	Gale

Information	
	Notification

Specifications

SoftBank 930SH

Weight	Approximately 110 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 210 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time	Approximately 300 hours (3G) Approximately 270 hours (GSM) (handset closed)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 135 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 48 x 105 x 15.2 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call and S! Appli Communication set to *Off*.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side, Keypad side)	Nylon resin/SUS (insert-molded), discontinuous deposition/UV painting
Housing (Display back hinge edges, Keypad side hinge), External Display window	ABS resin, discontinuous deposition/UV painting
Housing (Display back)	SUS, two-part coating, UV painting (SUS, electrodeposition coating for Silver)
Housing (Keypad side)	PC resin (with UV coating)/PET (with UV coating)
Housing (battery side), Battery Cover	ABS resin, UV painting
Display window, camera lens, Camera ornament panel (including Infrared Port)	Acrylic resin
Multi Selector, Center Key	Aluminum, anodized aluminum paint
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, TV & Text Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Keypad, Mobile Light	PC resin

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Side Keys	PC resin, deposition/UV painting
External Device Port Cover, Headphone Port Cover, Memory Card Slot Cover	PC resin/Elastomeric resin, discontinuous deposition/UV painting
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH12A/Trivalent chromate, EPDM O-ring seal
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

Accessories

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	710 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 37.7 x 46.9 x 4.2 mm (without protruding parts)

Basic Operations

■ Wallpaper/Standby Window

Standby Window	3 tags (100 characters each)

■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 15 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	15,360 characters (30,720 bytes)

■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

■ Data Folder

Memory	100 MB (shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library)

Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Frequency: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/ Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Decoration Call	100 KB including 20 characters
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	
	Sent Messages	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	100 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 300 KB	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
3D Pictogram	150 characters	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses (256 single-byte characters each)	
Anti Spam Measures	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Download	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
History	300 pages	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks/ Saved Pages	100 pages	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	10 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (30 KB per entry)	

Appendix

14

Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
Recording Time (example)	Handset	Approximately 30 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)	
Split File	99 portions per file	
Time Shift Recording	30 minutes	
Reservation List	5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card)	

Camera & Imaging

■ Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	8.0 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

■ Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.1x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	8M	2448 x 3264
	3M	1536 x 2048 (QXGA)
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	2M	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)
	1.2M	960 x 1280 (Quad-VGA)
	Normal HD	768 x 1366
	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	Mail L	240 x 320 (QVGA)
	Mail S	120 x 160 (QQVGA)
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	

File Format	JPEG
Memory	Approximately 40 files[*] (8M, High Quality)
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss
Recording Distance	Macro: 10 cm
Long Exposure	Exposure time: 4 seconds
Background Save	3 files
Face Auto Focus	VGA or larger
Other	Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames

[*]Approximate value for handset with no files.

■ Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.1x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	864 x 480 (Wide)
		640 x 480 (VGA)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
		240 x 176 (HQVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
	For Message	176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
File Format	3GP	
Recording Time per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes[*] on Memory Card
	For Message	295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Still Image Capture	3 images	
Recording Pause Supported	HQVGA or larger	

[*]Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

■ Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854) Power On/Off (480 x 854) Incoming Call (320 x 320) Alarm (480 x 208) Pictogram (96 x 96) VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

Appendix

14

Media Player & S! Applications

■ Media Player

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)

■ S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 100 MB (shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
Remote Control	Approximately 5 m

Handy Extras

■ PIM/Lifestyle

Calendar[*]/Tasks	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off: Approximately 30 minutes
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics

[*]Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of September 2008.

■ Timer/Clock

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	60 minutes in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

■ Doc./Rec.

Dictionary		Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases
Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad		500 entries (8,192 characters each)
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 3 minutes per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code		Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji
Scan Text		256 characters

■ Entertainment

S! Quick News	Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items
e-Books	Copy text strings of up to 20 characters

Communication Services

■ S! Loop

S! Loop List	5 items

■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Settings	Blog Menu	16 characters
	URL (Yahoo! Keitai)	1,024 characters
	URL (PC Site Browser)	1,024 characters
	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send

Appendix

14

Connectivity & File Backup

■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm
IrSS Transfer	Receive 2 MB or smaller JPEG images	

■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

■ Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/alphabets)

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records

Network

Add Network	5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/

■ microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility
From PC (Japanese)
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/

■ S! Addressbook Back-up
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/service/advanced/sab/

■ SVG-T
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html

■ Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
From PC
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/
From Handset (Japanese)
http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure				Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP			Still images in DCIM
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents		SD Local Contents
		Mail		Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI	Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Docs)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
			Virtual Space	S! Town files
			WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)
		SH_Folder		Application management files
		Utility		Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE		Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.
SD_AUDIO				SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)

Menu List

Appendix

14

Camera

Function		Refer to
Photo Camera		P.7-4
Video Camera		P.7-5
Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode	P.9-23
	Scan Card	P.9-25
	Scan Text	P.9-26
Review		P.7-6
Photo Camera Settings	Picture Size	P.7-15
	Picture Quality	P.7-14
	Settings	P.7-14
Video Camera Settings	Record Time/Size	P.7-16
	Microphone	P.7-16
	Settings	P.7-14

■ Photo Camera

Function		Refer to
Shooting Settings	Exposure	P.7-4
	Focus Setting	P.7-14
	White Balance	P.7-15
	Internal Camera	P.7-15
Modes	Add Frame	P.7-7
	Continuous Shoot	P.7-7
	Camera Effects	P.7-7
	Long Exposure	P.7-8
	Panorama/Scanner	P.7-8
Barcode/Scan		P.9-23
Data Folder		P.7-6
Picture Size		P.7-15
Scene		P.7-15
Picture Quality		P.7-14
Self-timer		P.7-7
Settings		P.7-14
ISO Sensitivity		P.7-15

Function	Refer to
Help	P.7-4
Mobile Light	P.7-14

■ Video Camera

Function		Refer to
Record Settings	Exposure	P.7-4
	Focus Setting	P.7-14
Display Size		P.7-16
Data Folder		P.7-6
Record Time/Size		P.7-16
Microphone		P.7-16
Video Quality		P.7-14
Self-timer		P.7-7
Settings		P.7-14
Internal Camera		P.7-16
Help		P.7-4
Mobile Light		P.7-14

■ Photo Camera Settings: Settings

Function	Refer to
Display Indicators	P.7-15
Shutter Sound	P.7-15
Save Pictures to	P.7-14
Auto Save	P.7-14
Background Save	P.7-15
Panorama Settings	P.7-16
Set Remote Shutter	P.7-16
Set Send Key	P.7-15

■ Video Camera Settings: Settings

Function	Refer to
Save Videos to	P.7-14
Auto Save	P.7-14

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News		P.9-27
S! Information Channel/Weather	What's New	P.9-28
	Back Issue	P.9-28
	Registration/Cancel	P.9-28
	Get Latest Contents	P.9-43
	Notification	P.9-42
	Weather Indicator	P.9-28
BookSurfing		P.9-29
e-Book Viewer		P.9-29

■ S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.9-27
S! Loop List		P.9-41
Settings	Automatic Update	P.9-41
	Show Image	P.9-42
	Check Schedule	P.9-42
	Change Skin	P.9-42
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.9-42

■ S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.9-43
Manual Update		P.9-28
Settings	Standby Setting	P.9-43
	Weather Notif.	P.9-43
	Icon Update	P.9-43

Appendix

14

14-26

Tools

■ PIM/Lifestyle

■ PIM/Lifestyle: Osaifu-Keitai

■ Timer/Clock

■ Doc./Rec.

Data Folder

Media Player

■ Music

■ Videos

■ **Phone Settings: Sounds & Alerts**

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.13-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-7
System Sounds	P.13-5
Vibration	P.2-7
Event Light	P.13-5
Status Light	P.13-5
Any Key Answer	P.13-5
Surround	P.13-5

■ **Phone Settings: Date & Time**

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.13-2
Time Correction	P.13-2
Daylight Saving	P.13-2
Set Time Zone	P.13-2
Clock/Calendar	P.13-4
World Clock	P.9-18
Alarms	P.9-6
Set Holiday	P.9-30
Time Format	P.13-2
Date Format	P.13-2
Calendar Format	P.13-2

■ **Phone Settings: Locks**

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.11-2
Change PIN2	P.11-6
Face Recog	P.11-4
Function Lock	P.11-2
IP Service Setting	P.13-7
Application Lock	P.11-3
History Lock	P.11-3
Show Secret Data	P.11-3
Set Lock Message	P.11-6
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-17

■ **Connectivity**

Function		Refer to
Bluetooth		P.12-7
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.12-3
	Send All	P.12-4
IC Transmission	Recv. Forwarded	P.12-5
	Send All	P.12-6
USB Mode	Mass Storage	P.12-10
	MTP Mode	P.8-4
USB Charge		P.1-22
Memory Card		P.2-25
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.12-18
	Backup Selected Items	P.12-12
	Restore All Items	P.12-18
	Restore Selected Items	P.12-12
	Settings/Manage	P.12-18

■ **Connectivity: Bluetooth**

Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.12-8
Add Device	P.12-8
Paired Devices	P.12-8
Send All	P.12-9
Setting Watch	P.12-17
My Device Settings	P.12-16
My Device Details	P.12-16

■ **Connectivity: Memory Card**

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.7-13
	Settings	P.7-17
	Check Settings	P.7-13
	Reset Settings	P.7-17
SD Local Contents		P.2-33
Format Card		P.2-25
Memory Status		P.2-21

Appendix

14

14-29

■ **Call/Video Call**

Function		Refer to
Call Time & Cost	Call Timers	P.3-10
	Data Counter	P.3-18
	Call Costs	P.3-10
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-4
	Answer Time	P.3-13
	Guidance Msg	P.3-13
	Volume	P.3-13
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.3-11
	Diverts	P.3-11
	Cancel All	P.3-12
	Status	P.3-18
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.3-20
	Incoming Picture	P.3-20
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-20
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-21
	Backlight	P.3-21
	Loudspeaker	P.3-20
	Mute Microphone	P.3-21
	Remote Monitor	P.3-13
Show My Number		P.3-20
⌷ᵒᵘᵗ Missed Calls		P.3-12
Int'l Calling		P.3-14
Disp. Time/ Cost	Display Call Cost	P.3-17
	Call Time Counter	P.3-17
Call Barring	Outgoing Calls	P.3-20
	Incoming Calls	P.3-20
	Rejected Numbers	P.3-19
	Change NW Password	P.3-19
Minute Minder		P.3-17

Function		Refer to
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.3-16
	Play in Receiving	P.3-16
	Notice	P.3-16
Auto Answer		P.3-20
Call Waiting		P.3-18

■ **NW Settings**

Function		Refer to
Select Network		P.13-6
Select Service		P.13-6
Offline Mode		P.1-16
Retrieve NW Info		P.13-6
Location Info	URL Setting	P.13-7
	Datum On/Off	P.13-7
	Location Prop.	P.13-7
Network Info		P.13-6
External Device		P.13-6

Appendix

14

14-30

Index

Appendix

14

Appendix

14

Warranty & Service

■ **Warranty**
Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.
● Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
● Read contents and keep in a safe place.
● The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ **After-Sales Services**
See **P.14-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.
If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.14-40**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.
● Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
● Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-40**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

● SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
● SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
● Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial +**81**-**3**-**5351**-**3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

SoftBank 930SH User Guide

January 2009, First Edition
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 930SH
Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:
- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.